PROFESSIONAL DIGITAL TWO-WAY RADIO

MOTOTRBO™
XPR 5550/XPR 5580/XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e
COLOR DISPLAY MOBILE
USER GUIDE

Contents

1

English

Making and Receiving Calls in Non-Connect Plus Mode................................... 42

Advanced Features in Non-Connect Plus Mode............ 56

3

5

Contents

Making and Receiving Calls in Connect Plus Mode...... 190

9

11

Accessories..................................276

Authorized Accessories

Maritime Radio Use in the VHF

13

Declaration of Conformity

This declaration is applicable to your radio only if your radio is labeled with the FCC logo shown below.

Declaration of Conformity

Per FCC CFR 47 Part 2 Section 2.1077(a)

Responsible Party

Name: Motorola Solutions, Inc.

Address: 1303 East Algonquin Road, Schaumburg, IL 60196-1078, U.S.A.

Phone Number: 1-800-927-2744

Hereby declares that the product:

Model Name: **XPR 5550/XPR 5580/XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e**

conforms to the following regulations:

FCC Part 15, subpart B, section 15.107(a), 15.107(d) and section 15.109(a)

14

Class B Digital Device

As a personal computer peripheral, this device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1 This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2 This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note:
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or TV technician for help.

Appareil numérique de Classe B

En tant que périphérique d'ordinateur personnel, cet appareil est conforme aux stipulations de la partie 15 des règlements de la FCC. Cet appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. Son utilisation est assujettie aux deux conditions suivantes :

1 Cet appareil ne doit pas causer d'interférence nuisible.

2 Cet appareil doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris les interférences pouvant entraîner un fonctionnement indésirable.

Remarque

Ce matériel a fait l'objet de tests et a été déclaré conforme aux limites établies pour un appareil numérique de classe B, comme il est stipulé à la section 15 des règlements de la FCC. Ces limites sont fixées afin d'offrir une protection suffisante contre des interférences nuisibles dans une installation résidentielle. Ce matériel génère, utilise et peut émettre de l'énergie radiofréquence et, s'il n'est pas installé ni utilisé conformément aux instructions, il peut provoquer un brouillage nuisible aux communications radio. Cependant, on ne peut garantir qu'il n'y aura aucune interférence dans une installation particulière.

Si cet appareil cause une interférence nuisible de la réception de la radio ou de la télévision, ce qui peut être déterminé en éteignant et en allumant l'appareil, vous êtes encouragé à remédier à la situation en prenant une ou plusieurs des mesures suivantes :

• Réorienter ou déplacer l'antenne réceptrice.

• Augmenter la distance entre l'équipement et le récepteur.

• Brancher l'appareil dans une autre prise sur un circuit différent de celui du récepteur.

• Consulter un revendeur ou un technicien radio/télévision chevronné pour obtenir de l'aide.

Important Safety Information

RF Energy Exposure and Product Safety Guide for Mobile Two-Way Radios

ATTENTION!

This radio is restricted to Occupational use only. Before using the radio, read the RF Energy Exposure and Product Safety Guide for Mobile Two-Way Radios which contains important operating instructions for safe usage and RF energy awareness and control for Compliance with applicable standards and Regulations.

For a list of Motorola-approved antennas and other accessories, visit the following website:

http://www.motorolasolutions.com

Any modification to this device, not expressly authorized by Motorola, may void the user's authority to operate this device.

Under Industry Canada regulations, this radio transmitter may only operate using an antenna of a type and maximum (or lesser) gain approved for the transmitter by Industry Canada. To reduce potential radio interference to other users, the antenna type

and its gain should be so chosen that the equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) is not more than that necessary for successful communication.

This radio transmitter has been approved by Industry Canada to operate with Motorola-approved antenna with the maximum permissible gain and required antenna impedance for each antenna type indicated. Antenna types not included in this list, having a gain greater than the maximum gain indicated for that type, are strictly prohibited for use with this device.

16

Consignes de sécurité importantes

Radios bidirectionnelles mobiles : exposition aux radiofréquences et sécurité du produit

ATTENTION!

Cette radio ne doit être utilisée qu'à des fins professionnelles. Avant d'utiliser la radio, lisez le guide Radios bidirectionnelles mobiles : exposition aux radiofréquences et sécurité du produit, qui contient d'importantes instructions de fonctionnement pour une utilisation sécuritaire et des informations sur l'exposition aux fréquences radioélectriques, dans le but d'assurer votre conformité aux normes et règlements en vigueur.

Visitez le site Web suivant pour obtenir la liste des antennes et des autres accessoires approuvés par Motorola :

http://www.motorolasolutions.com

Toute modification effectuée à cet appareil sans l'autorisation explicite de Motorola peut annuler l'autorisation d'utiliser cet appareil.

Selon la réglementation d'Industrie Canada, cet émetteur radio ne peut être utilisé qu'avec une antenne dont le type et le gain maximal (ou minimal) sont approuvés par Industrie Canada pour cet émetteur. Afin de limiter les interférences radio pour les autres utilisateurs, le type et le gain de l'antenne doivent être choisis de façon à ce que la puissance isotrope rayonnée équivalente (P.I.R.E.) ne soit pas plus forte qu'il ne le faut pour établir la communication.

Cet émetteur radio a été approuvé par Industrie Canada pour utilisation avec une antenne approuvée par Motorola offrant le gain maximal autorisé et l'impédance requise pour le type d'antenne indiqué. Il est strictement interdit d'utiliser avec cet appareil tout type d'antenne ne figurant pas dans cette liste et présentant un gain supérieur au maximum indiqué pour le type.

Software Version

All the features described in the following sections are supported by the software version **R02.50.00** or later.

See *Checking the Firmware Version and Codeplug Version* on page 137 to determine the software version of your radio.

Check with your dealer or system administrator for more details of all the features supported.

Version logicielle

Toutes les fonctions décrites dans les sections suivantes sont prises en charge par la version **R02.50.00** ou les versions ultérieures du logiciel de la radio.

Consultez la section *Checking the Firmware Version and Codeplug Version* on page 137 pour connaître la version logicielle de votre radio.

Pour obtenir davantage de renseignements à propos des fonctions prises en charge, adressez-vous à votre détaillant ou à votre administrateur de système.

18

Computer Software Copyrights

The Motorola products described in this manual may include copyrighted Motorola computer programs stored in semiconductor memories or other media. Laws in the United States and other countries preserve for Motorola certain exclusive rights for copyrighted computer programs including, but not limited to, the exclusive right to copy or reproduce in any form the copyrighted computer program. Accordingly, any copyrighted Motorola computer programs contained in the Motorola products described in this manual may not be copied, reproduced, modified, reverse-engineered, or distributed in any manner without the express written permission of Motorola. Furthermore, the purchase of Motorola products shall not be deemed to grant either directly or by implication, estoppel, or otherwise, any license under the copyrights, patents or patent applications of Motorola, except for the normal non-exclusive license to use that arises by operation of law in the sale of a product.

The AMBE+2™ voice coding Technology embodied in this product is protected by intellectual property rights including patent rights, copyrights and trade secrets of Digital Voice Systems, Inc.

This voice coding Technology is licensed solely for use within this Communications Equipment. The user of this Technology is explicitly prohibited from attempting to decompile, reverse engineer, or disassemble the Object Code, or in any other way convert the Object Code into a human-readable form.

U.S. Pat. Nos. #5,870,405, #5,826,222, #5,754,974, #5,701,390, #5,715,365, #5,649,050, #5,630,011, #5,581,656, #5,517,511, #5,491,772, #5,247,579, #5,226,084 and #5,195,166.

19

Getting Started

How to Use This Guide

This User Guide covers the basic operation of the MOTOTRBO Mobiles.

However, your dealer or system administrator may have customized your radio for your specific needs. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Throughout this publication, the icons described next are used to indicate features supported in either the conventional Analog mode or conventional Digital mode:

	Indicates a conventional **Analog Mode-Only** feature.
	Indicates a conventional **Digital Mode-Only** feature.

For features that are available in **both** conventional Analog and Digital modes, **no** icon is shown.

Conventional Analog Mode-Only features are not available in Connect Plus mode of operation. See *Connect Plus Operations* on page 180 for more information.

For features that are available in a conventional multi-site mode, see *IP Site Connect* on page 39 for more information.

Selected features are **also** available on the single-site trunking mode, **Capacity Plus**. See *Capacity Plus* on page 39 for more information.

Selected features are **also** available in the multi-site trunking mode, **Linked Capacity Plus**. See *Linked Capacity Plus* on page 40 for more information.

What Your Dealer/System Administrator Can Tell You

You can consult your dealer or system administrator about the following:

- Is your radio programmed with any preset conventional channels?
- Which buttons have been programmed to access other features?
- What optional accessories may suit your needs?

- What are the best radio usage practices for effective communication?
- What maintenance procedures will help promote longer radio life?

Preparing Your Radio for Use

Powering Up the Radio

Press the **On/Off Button** (Ⓐ) briefly. You see `MOTOTRBO (TM)` on the display of the radio momentarily, followed by a welcome message or welcome image.

The green LED and the Home screen lights up.

A brief tone sounds, indicating that the power up test is successful.

> **Note:**
> There is no power up tone if the radio tones/alerts function is disabled (see *Turning the Radio Tones/Alerts On or Off* on page 121).

If your radio does not power up, contact your dealer.

Turn off the radio by pressing and holding the **On/Off Button** until you see `Powering Down` on the display of the radio.

> **Note:**
> Your radio may take up to 7 seconds to completely turn off.

Adjusting the Volume

Increase the volume by turning the **Volume/Channel Knob** (Ⓐ) clockwise.

Decrease the volume by turning this knob counterclockwise.

> **Note:**
> Your radio can be programmed to have a minimum volume offset where the volume level cannot be lowered past the programmed

minimum volume. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Identifying Radio Controls

Radio Controls

1 On/Off/Information Button
2 Volume/Channel Knob
3 Display
4 Menu/OK Button
5 Scroll Up/Down Buttons
6 Speaker
7 Return/Home Button

8 Front Programmable Buttons[1]
9 Accessory Connector
10 LED Indicators

Using the Volume/Channel Knob

The **Volume/Channel Knob** can be programmed as dual purpose for both volume and channel or as a volume-only control.

To adjust the volume, see *Adjusting the Volume* on page 22.

To change channels, push and hold the knob until channel selection screen is displayed, then turn the knob to the required channel.

To exit the channel selection state, do one of the following:

• Push the **Volume/Channel Knob** again.

• Press ⌗OK .

• Press ⟲⌂ .

• Wait for the menu timer to expire.

---

1 These buttons are programmable.

Non-Connect Plus Operations

Additional Radio Controls in Non-Connect Plus Mode

Push-To-Talk (PTT) Button

The **PTT** button on the side of the radio (Ⓐ) serves two basic purposes:

• While a call is in progress, the **PTT** button allows the radio to transmit to other radios in the call.

Press and hold the **PTT** button to talk. Release the **PTT** button to listen.

The microphone is activated when the **PTT** button is pressed.

• While a call is not in progress, the **PTT** button is used to make a new call (see *Making a Radio Call* on page 47).

If the Talk Permit Tone or the **PTT** Sidetone 🔊 is enabled, wait until the short alert tone ends before talking.

🔔 During a call, if the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled on your radio (programmed by your dealer), you will hear a short alert tone the moment the target radio (the radio that is receiving your call) releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond.

🔔 You will also hear a continuous talk prohibit tone, if your call is interrupted, indicating that you should release the **PTT** button, for example when the radio receives an Emergency Call.

Programmable Buttons

Your dealer can program the programmable buttons as shortcuts to radio functions depending on the duration of a button press:

Short press Pressing and releasing rapidly.

Long press   Pressing and holding for the programmed duration.

Press and hold   Keeping the button pressed.

> **Note:**
> The programmed duration of a button press is applicable for all assignable radio/utility functions or settings. See *Emergency Operation* on page 76 for more information on the programmed duration of the **Emergency** button.

Assignable Radio Functions

Audio Ambience	Allows the user to select an environment the radio is operating in.
Audio Profiles	Allows the user to select the preferred audio profile.
Bluetooth® Audio Switch	Toggles audio routing between internal radio speaker and external Bluetooth-enabled accessory.
Call Alert	Provides direct access to the contacts list for you to select a

contact to whom a Call Alert can be sent.

Call Forwarding	Toggles Call Forwarding on or off.
Call Log	Selects the call log list.
Contacts	Provides direct access to the Contacts list.
Emergency	Depending on the programming, initiates or cancels an emergency.
Ext PA On/Off	Toggles the audio routing between the connected public address (PA) loudspeaker amplifier and the radio's internal public address (PA) system.
Intelligent Audio	Toggles intelligent audio on or off.
Manual Dial	Depending on the programming, initiates a Private or Phone Call by keying in any subscriber ID or phone number.

Manual Site Roam[2] ⊕	Starts the manual site search.	**Option Board Feature**	Toggles option board feature(s) on or off for option board-enabled channels.
Mic AGC On/Off	Toggles the internal microphone automatic gain control (AGC) on or off.	**PA On/Off**	Toggles the radio's internal public address (PA) system on or off.
Monitor	Monitors a selected channel for activity.	**Permanent Monitor**	Monitors a selected channel for all radio traffic until function is disabled.
Notifications	Provides direct access to the Notifications list.	**Phone**	Provides direct access to the Phone Contacts list.
Nuisance Channel Delete[2]	Temporarily removes an unwanted channel, except for the Selected Channel, from the scan list. The Selected Channel refers to the selected zone or channel combination of the user from which scan is initiated.	**Privacy** ⊕	Toggles privacy on or off.
		Radio Alias and ID	Provides radio alias and ID.
		Radio Check	Determines if a radio is active in a system.
One Touch Access	Directly initiates a predefined Private, Phone or Group Call, a Call Alert or a Quick Text message.	**Radio Enable**	Allows a target radio to be remotely enabled.
		Radio Disable	Allows a target radio to be remotely disabled.

28

Remote Monitor	Turns on the microphone of a target radio without it giving any indicators.	**Transmit Interrupt Remote Dekey** 🔵	Stops the transmission of a remote monitored radio without giving any indicators, or an ongoing interruptible call to free the channel.
Repeater/ Talkaround[2]	Toggles between using a repeater and communicating directly with another radio.	**Trill Enhancement On/Off**	Toggles trill enhancement on or off.
Scan[2]	Toggles scan on or off.	**Voice Announcement for Channel**	Plays zone and channel announcement voice messages for the current channel. This function is unavailable when Voice Announcement is disabled.
Site Info	Displays current Linked Capacity Plus site name and ID. Plays site announcement voice messages for the current site (this function is unavailable when Voice Announcement is disabled).		
Site Lock On/Off[2] 🔵	When toggled on, the radio searches the current site only. When toggled off, the radio searches other sites in addition to the current site.	**Voice Announcement On/Off**	Toggles voice announcement on or off.
		Voice Operating Transmission (VOX)	Toggles VOX on or off.
Telemetry Control 🔵	Controls the Output Pin on a local or remote radio.	**Zone**	Allows selection from a list of zones.
Text Message	Selects the text message menu.		

29

Assignable Settings or Utility Functions

All Tones/ Alerts	Toggles all tones and alerts on or off.
Backlight	Toggles display backlight on or off.
Channel Up/ Down	Depending on the programming, changes channel to previous or next channel.
Display Mode	Toggles the day/night display mode on or off.
Power Level	Toggles transmit power level between high and low.
Squelch 🔴	Toggles squelch level between tight and normal.

Accessing the Programmed Functions

You can access various radio functions through one of the following ways:

- A short or long press of the relevant programmable buttons.

- Use the Menu Navigation Buttons as follows:

1 Press 🔲 OK to access the menu. Press the appropriate Menu Scroll button (▲ or ▼) to access the menu functions.

2 To select a function or enter a sub-menu, press the 🔲 OK button.

3 To go back one menu level, or to return to the previous screen, press the ⤺ button. Long press the ⤺ button to return to the Home screen.

> **Note:**
> The Menu Navigation Buttons are also available on a keypad microphone (see *Keypad Microphone Features* on page 140).

30 ² Not applicable in Capacity Plus and Linked Capacity Plus

Note:
Your radio automatically exits the menu after a period of inactivity and returns to your Home screen.

Identifying Status Indicators

Display Icons

The liquid crystal display (LCD) of your radio shows radio status, text entries, and menu entries.

The following are icons that appear on the display of the radio. Icons are displayed on the status bar, arranged left-most in order of appearance/usage and are channel specific.

	Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) The number of bars displayed represents the radio signal strength. Four bars indicate the strongest signal. This icon is only displayed while receiving.
	Monitor

Selected channel is being monitored.

	Bluetooth The Bluetooth feature is enabled but there is no remote Bluetooth device connected.
	Bluetooth Connected The Bluetooth feature is enabled. The icon stays lit when a remote Bluetooth device is connected.
	Sign In Radio is signed in to the remote server.
	Sign Out Radio is signed out of the remote server.
	Job Ticket Notification Notification List has items to review.
or	**Power Level**

31

	Radio is set at Low power or Radio is set at High power.
	Tones Disable Tones are turned off.
	Option Board The Option Board is enabled.
	Option Board Non-Function The Option Board is disabled.
	Over-the-Air Programming Delay Timer Indicates time left before automatic restart of radio.
	GPS/GNSS Available 🔵 The GPS/GNSS feature is enabled. The icon stays lit when a position fix is available.

	GPS/GNSS Not Available/Out of Range 🔵 The GPS/GNSS feature is enabled but is not receiving data from the satellite.
	Scan[3][4] Scan feature is enabled.
	Scan- Priority 1[3][4] Radio detects activity on channel/group designated as Priority 1.
	Scan- Priority 2[3][4] Radio detects activity on channel/group designated as Priority 2.
	Vote Scan Vote scan feature is enabled.
	Flexible Receive List Flexible receive list is enabled.

32

⚠️	**Emergency** Radio is in Emergency mode.
🔑	**Secure** The Privacy feature is enabled.
🔑̸	**Unsecure** The Privacy feature is disabled.
	Site Roaming[3] The site roaming feature is enabled.
	Talkaround[3][4] In the absence of a repeater, radio is currently configured for direct radio to radio communication.
	Wi-Fi Excellent[5]

	Wi-Fi signal is excellent.
	Wi-Fi Good[5] Wi-Fi signal is good.
	Wi-Fi Average[5] Wi-Fi signal is average.
	Wi-Fi Poor[5] Wi-Fi signal is poor.
	Wi-Fi Unavailable[5] Wi-Fi signal is unavailable.

---

3 Not applicable in Capacity Plus
4 Not applicable in Linked Capacity Plus
5 Only applicable for XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e

Call Icons

The following icons appear on the radio's display during a call. These icons also appear in the Contacts list to indicate ID type.

	Private Call Indicates a Private Call in progress. In the Contacts list, it indicates a subscriber alias (name) or ID (number).
	Group Call/All Call Indicates a Group Call or All Call in progress. In the Contacts list, it indicates a group alias (name) or ID (number).
	Phone Call as Private Call Indicates a Phone Call as Private Call in progress. In the Contacts list, it indicates a phone alias (name) or ID (number).
	Phone Call as Group/All Call

	Indicates a Phone Call as Group/All Call in progress. In the Contacts list, it indicates a group alias (name) or ID (number).
	Bluetooth PC Call Indicates a Bluetooth PC Call in progress. In the Contacts list, it indicates a Bluetooth PC Call alias (name) or ID (number).

Advanced Menu Icons

The following icons appear beside menu items that offer a choice between two options or as an indication that there is a sub-menu offering two options.

	Checkbox (Empty) Indicates the option is not selected.
	Checkbox (Checked) Indicates the option is selected.
	Solid Black Box

34

Indicates the option selected for the menu item with a sub-menu.

Mini Notice Icons

The following icons appear momentarily on the radio's display after an action to perform task is taken.

✔	**Successful Transmission (Positive)** Successful action taken.
!	**Failed Transmission (Negative)** Failed action taken.
⠿	**Transmission in Progress (Transitional)** Transmitting. This is seen before indication for Successful Transmission or Failed Transmission.

Sent Item Icons 🔵

The following icons appear at the top right corner of the radio's display in the Sent Items folder.

✔ OR ✔	**Sent Successfully** The text message is sent successfully.
✗ OR ✗	**Send Failed** The text message has not been sent.
✉ OR ✉	**In-Progress** • The text message to a group alias or ID is pending transmission. • The text message to a subscriber alias or ID is pending transmission, followed by waiting for acknowledgement.

Bluetooth Device Icons

The following icons also appear next to items in the list of Bluetooth-enabled devices available to indicate the device type.

	Bluetooth Data Device Bluetooth-enabled data device, such as a scanner.
	Bluetooth Audio Device Bluetooth-enabled audio device, such as a headset.
	Bluetooth PTT Device Bluetooth-enabled PTT device, such as a PTT-Only Device (POD).

Job Tickets Icons

	All Jobs Indicates all jobs listed.

	New Jobs Indicates new jobs.

LED Indicator

The LED indicator (Ⓐ) shows the operational status of your radio.

Blinking red	Radio is transmitting at low battery condition, receiving or sending an emergency transmission, has failed the self-test upon powering up, or has moved out of range if radio is configured with Auto-Range Transponder System.

Solid yellow	Radio is monitoring a conventional channel or in Bluetooth Discoverable Mode.
Blinking yellow	Radio is scanning for activity or receiving a Call Alert, flexible receive list is enabled or all local Linked Capacity Plus channels are busy.
Double blinking yellow	Radio is no longer connected to the repeater while in Capacity Plus or Linked Capacity Plus; all Capacity Plus or Linked Capacity Plus channels are currently busy.
Solid green	Radio is powering up or transmitting.
Blinking green	Radio is powering up, receiving a non-privacy-enabled call or data, or detecting activity, or retrieving Over-the-Air Programming transmissions over the air.
Double blinking green	Radio is receiving a privacy-enabled call or data.

Note:

While in conventional mode, when the LED blinks green, it indicates the radio detects activity over the air. Due to the nature of the digital protocol, this activity may or may not affect the radio's programmed channel.

For Capacity Plus and Linked Capacity Plus, there is no LED indication when the radio is detecting activity over the air.

Alert Tones

Alert tones provide you with audible indications of the status, or response to data received on the radio.

Continuous Tone	A monotone sound. Sounds continuously until termination.
Periodic Tone	Sounds periodically depending on the duration set by the radio. Tone starts, stops, and repeats itself.
Repetitive Tone	A single tone that repeats itself until it is terminated by the user.

37

| **Momentary Tone** | Sounds only once for a short period of time defined by the radio. |

Indicator Tones

| High pitched tone ☐ | Low pitched tone ■ |

| | Positive Indicator Tone |
| | Negative Indicator Tone |

Switching Between Conventional Analog and Digital Mode

Each channel in your radio can be configured as a conventional analog or conventional digital channel.

To switch between an analog or a digital channel, use the

- **Scroll Up/Down** (Ⓑ) buttons.
- **Volume/Channel Knob** (Ⓐ).
- Programmed **Channel Up** or **Channel Down** buttons.

When switching from digital to analog mode, certain features are unavailable. Icons for the digital features (such as Messages) reflect this change by appearing 'grayed out'. Disabled features are hidden in the menu.

Your radio also has features available in both analog and digital mode. However, the minor differences in the way each feature works does **not** affect the performance of your radio.

Note:
Your radio also switches between digital and analog modes during a dual mode scan (see *Scan* on page 62).

To use the **Scroll Up/Down** buttons, while in the Home Screen of the required Zone, press

⬆ or ⬇ to select the required channel.

To use the programmed **Channel Up** or **Channel Down** buttons, while in the Home Screen of the required Zone, press **Channel Up** or **Channel Down** to select the required channel.

IP Site Connect 🔵

This feature allows your radio to extend conventional communication beyond the reach of a single site, by connecting to different available sites which are connected via an Internet Protocol (IP) network.

When the radio moves out of range from one site and into the range of another, it connects to the new site's repeater to send or receive calls/data transmissions. Depending on your settings, this is done automatically or manually.

If the radio is set to do this automatically, it scans through all available sites when the signal from the current site is weak or when the radio is unable to detect any signal from the current site. It then locks on to the repeater with the strongest Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) value.

In a manual site search, the radio searches for the next site in the roam list that is currently in range (but which may not have the strongest signal) and locks on to it.

Note:
Each channel can only have either Scan or Roam enabled, not both at the same time.

Channels with this feature enabled can be added to a particular roam list. The radio searches the channel(s) in the roam list during the automatic roam operation to locate the best site.

A roam list supports a maximum of 16 channels (including the Selected Channel).

Note:
You cannot manually add or delete an entry to the roam list. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Capacity Plus 🔵

Capacity Plus is a single-site trunking configuration of the MOTOTRBO radio system, which uses a pool of channels to support hundreds of users and up to 254 Groups. This feature allows your radio to efficiently utilize the available number of programmed channels while in Repeater Mode.

You hear a negative indicator tone if you try to access a feature not applicable to Capacity Plus via a programmable button press.

Your radio also has features that are available in conventional digital mode, IP Site Connect, Capacity Plus and Linked Capacity Plus. However, the minor differences in the way each feature works does **not** affect the performance of your radio.

Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information on this configuration.

Linked Capacity Plus 🔵

Linked Capacity Plus is a multi-site multi-channel trunking configuration of the MOTOTRBO radio system, combining the best of both Capacity Plus and IP Site Connect configurations.

Linked Capacity Plus allows your radio to extend trunking communication beyond the reach of a single site, by connecting to different available sites which are connected via an Internet Protocol (IP) network. It also provides an increase in capacity by efficiently utilizing the combined available number of programmed channels supported by each of the available sites.

When the radio moves out of range from one site and into the range of another, it connects to the new site's repeater to send or receive calls/data transmissions. Depending on your settings, this is done automatically or manually.

If the radio is set to do this automatically, it scans through all available sites when the signal from the current site is weak or when the radio is unable to detect any signal from the current site. It then locks on to the repeater with the strongest Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) value.

In a manual site search, the radio searches for the next site in the roam list that is currently in range (but which may not have the strongest signal) and locks on to it.

Any channel with Linked Capacity Plus enabled can be added to a particular roam list. The radio searches these channels during the automatic roam operation to locate the best site.

Note:
You cannot manually add or delete an entry to the roam list. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Similar to Capacity Plus, icons of features not applicable to Linked Capacity Plus are not available in the menu. You hear a negative indicator tone if you try to access a feature not applicable to Linked Capacity Plus via a programmable button press.

Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information on this configuration.

Making and Receiving Calls in Non-Connect Plus Mode

Selecting a Zone

A zone is a group of channels. Your radio supports up to 99 channels and 2 zones, with a maximum of 99 channels per zone.

1 Access the Zone feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Zone button	Press the programmed **Zone** button.
Radio menu	1 `OK` to access the menu. 2 ▲ or ▼ to Zone and press `OK` to select.

The current zone is displayed and indicated by a ✔.

2 Select the required zone.

Radio Control	Steps
▲ or ▼	▲ or ▼ and scroll to the required zone.

3 Press `OK` to select.
The display shows `<Zone> Selected` momentarily and returns to the selected zone screen.

Selecting a Channel

Transmissions are sent and received on a channel. Depending on your radio's configuration, each channel may have been programmed differently to support different groups of users or supplied with different features.

Select a channel by using:

- **Scroll Up** or **Scroll Down** buttons.
- **Volume/Channel Knob**.
- The programmed **Channel Up** or **Channel Down** buttons.

Receiving and Responding to a Radio Call

Once the channel, subscriber ID, or group ID is displayed, you can proceed to receive and respond to calls.

The LED lights up solid green while the radio is transmitting and blinks green when the radio is receiving.

Note:
The LED lights up solid green while the radio is transmitting and double blinks green when the radio is receiving a privacy-enabled call.

To unscramble a privacy-enabled call, your radio must have the same Privacy Key, OR the same Key Value and Key ID (programmed by your dealer), as the transmitting radio (the radio you are receiving the call from).

See *Privacy* on page 99 for more information.

Receiving and Responding to a Group Call

To receive a call from a group of users, your radio must be configured as part of that group.

When you receive a Group Call (while on the Home screen), the LED blinks green. The Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the caller alias. The second text line displays the group call alias. Your radio unmutes and the incoming call sounds through the radio's speaker.

1 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

- 🔒 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.
- 🔒 If the Voice Interrupt feature is enabled, press the **PTT** button to stop the current call from the transmitting radio and free the channel for you to talk/respond.

The LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for one of the following tones to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

- The Talk Permit Tone

- The **PTT** Sidetone 🔴

3 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

> **Note:**
> See *Making a Group Call* on page 48 for details on making a Group Call.

Receiving and Responding to a Private Call 🔵

A Private Call is a call from an individual radio to another individual radio.

Your radio unmutes and the incoming call sounds through the speaker of the radio.

1 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

- 🔵 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

- 🔵 If the Voice Interrupt feature is enabled, press the **PTT** button to stop the current call from the transmitting radio and free the channel for you to talk/respond.

The LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

3 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

See *Making a Private Call* on page 49 for details on making a Private Call.

Receiving an All Call

An All Call is a call from an individual radio to every radio on the channel. It is used to make important announcements requiring the user's full attention.

When you receive an All Call, a tone sounds and the LED blinks green.

The Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the caller alias. The second

44

text line displays `All Call`. Your radio unmutes and the incoming call sounds through the radio speaker.

Once the All Call ends, the radio returns to the previous screen before receiving the call. An All Call does not wait for a predetermined time before ending.

🔵 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is now available for use.

You cannot respond to an All Call.

> 📝 **Note:**
> See *Making an All Call* on page 50 for details on making an All Call.

> 📝 **Note:**
> The radio stops receiving the All Call if you switch to a different channel while receiving the call. During an All Call, you will **not** be able to use any programmed button functions until the call ends.

Receiving and Responding to a Selective Call 🔴

A Selective Call is a call from an individual radio to another individual radio. It is a Private Call on an analog system.

When you receive a Selective Call, the LED blinks green. The Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the caller alias or `Selective Call` or `Alert with Call`. The first text line shows the Private Call icon. The radio displays `Selective Call` or `Alert with Call`. Your radio unmutes and the incoming call sounds through the radio's speaker.

1 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

2 Press the **PTT** button to respond to the call.
The LED lights up solid green.

3 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

4 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

You hear a short tone. The display shows `Call Ended`.

See *Making a Private Call* on page 49 for details on making a Private Call.

Receiving and Responding to a Phone Call 🌐

> 📝 **Note:**
> If Phone Call capability is enabled, you are able to respond to a Phone Call. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Phone Call as Private Call

When you receive a Phone Call as a Private Call, the Phone Call icon appears in the top right corner; the display shows the caller alias or `Phone Call`.

If Phone Call capability is not enabled on your radio, the first line of the display shows `Unavailable` and your radio mutes the call. Your radio returns to the previous screen when the call ends.

1 Press the **PTT** button to talk and release it to listen.

2 Press 🔘 to end the call.

The display shows `Ending Phone Call`.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Call Ended`.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Call Ended`.

If unsuccessful, your radio returns to the Phone Call screen. Repeat this step or wait for the telephone user to end the call.

Phone Call as Group Call

When you receive a Phone Call as a Group Call, the Phone Group Call icon appears in the top right corner; the display shows the group alias and `Phone Call`.

If Phone Call capability is not enabled on your radio, the display shows `Unavailable` and your radio mutes the call. Your radio returns to the previous screen when the call ends.

1 Press the **PTT** button to talk and release it to listen.

2 Press 🔘 to end the call.

The display shows `Ending Phone Call`.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Call Ended`.

If unsuccessful, your radio returns to the Phone Call screen. Repeat this step to end the call.

Phone Call as All Call

When you receive a Phone Call as an All Call, the Phone Call icon appears in the top right corner; the display shows `All Call` and `Phone Call`.

If Phone Call capability is not enabled on your radio, the display shows `Unavailable` and your radio mutes the call. Your radio returns to the previous screen when the call ends.

📝 **Note:**

When you receive a Phone Call as an All Call, you can respond to the call or end the call, only if an All Call type is assigned to the channel.

1 Press the **PTT** button to talk and release it to listen.

2 Press 🔄 to end the call.

The display shows `Ending Phone Call`.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows `All Call` and `Call Ended`.

Making a Radio Call

After selecting your channel, you can select a subscriber alias or ID, or group alias or ID by using:

- A programmed **One Touch Access** button – The One Touch Access feature allows you to make a Group or Private Call to a predefined ID easily. This feature can be assigned to a short or long programmable button press. You can **ONLY** have one ID assigned to a **One Touch Access** button. Your radio can have multiple **One Touch Access** buttons programmed.
- The programmed number keys – This method is for Group, Private and All Calls only and is used with the keypad (see *Making a Group, Private or All Call with the Programmable Number Key* on page 53).
- The Contacts list (see *Contact Settings* on page 64). 🌐
- Manual Dial – This method is for Private and Phone Calls only and is dialed using the keypad (see *Making a Private Call by Manual Dial* on page

145, and *Making a Phone Call by Manual Dial* on page 146). 🔵

Note:

Your radio must have the Privacy feature enabled on the channel to send a privacy-enabled transmission. Only target radios with the same Privacy Key OR the same Key Value and Key ID as your radio will be able to unscramble the transmission.

Note:

See *Privacy* on page 99 for more information.

Making a Group Call

To make a call to a group of users, your radio must be configured as part of that group.

1   Do one of the following.

- Select the channel with the active group alias or ID. See *Selecting a Channel* on page 42.
- Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button.

2   Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3   Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
    The LED lights up solid green. The Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the group call alias.

4   Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green. You see the Group Call icon, the group alias or ID, and transmitting radio alias or ID on your display.

5   🔵 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends. Radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

Note:

You can also make a Group Call via Contacts (see *Making a Group Call from Contacts* on page 65).

48

Making a Private Call 🔵

While you can receive and/or respond to a Private Call initiated by an authorized individual radio, your radio must be programmed for you to initiate a Private Call.

There are two types of Private Calls. The first type, where a radio presence check is performed prior to setting up the call, while the other sets up the call immediately.

Only **one** of these call types can be programmed to your radio by your dealer.

You will hear a negative indicator tone, when you make a Private Call via the Menu, **One Touch Access** button, the programmed number keys, or the Volume/Channel Selector Knob, if this feature is not enabled.

Use the Text Message or Call Alert features to contact an individual radio. See *Text Message Features* on page 83 or *Call Alert Operation* on page 75 for more information.

1 Do one of the following.

- Select the channel with the active subscriber alias or ID. See *Selecting a Channel* on page 42.
- Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green. The Private Call icon appears on the top right corner. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The second text line displays the call status.

4 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

5 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green.

6 🔵 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

49

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends. You hear a short tone. The display shows `Call Ended`.

You can also make a Private Call via Contacts (see *Making a Private Call from Contacts* on page 66).

Making an All Call

This feature allows you to transmit to all users on the channel. Your radio must be programmed to allow you to use this feature.

Users on the channel cannot respond to an All Call.

1 Select the channel with the active All Call group alias or ID. See *Selecting a Channel* on page 42.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green.The Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows `All Call`.

4 Wait for one of the following tones to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

• The Talk Permit Tone
• The **PTT** Sidetone

Making a Selective Call

Just like a Private Call, while you can receive and/or respond to a Selective Call initiated by an authorized individual radio, your radio must be programmed for you to initiate a Selective Call.

1 Select the channel with the active subscriber alias or ID. See *Selecting a Channel* on page 42.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green. The Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The second text line displays the call status.

4 Wait for one of the following tones to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

• The Talk Permit Tone
• The **PTT** Sidetone

50

5 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green.

🌐 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

The display shows `Call Ended`.

Making a Phone Call

1 Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button to make a Phone Call to the predefined alias or ID.

If the entry for the **One Touch Access** button is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds. If the access code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the display shows `Access Code:`.

Enter the access code and press 🔳 to proceed.

The LED lights up solid green. The Phone Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The second text line displays the call status.

If the call-setup is successful, the DTMF tone sounds. You hear the dialing tone of the telephone user. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The Phone Call icon remains in the top right corner.

If the call-setup is unsuccessful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Phone Call Failed`. Your radio returns to the Access Code input screen. If the access code was preconfigured in the Contacts list, the radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

---

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

---

3 Press the **PTT** button to talk and release it to listen.

To enter extra digits, if requested by the Phone Call, enter the extra digits using the keypad and

press 🔳 to proceed.

The DTMF tone sounds with each keypad press, and the radio returns to the previous screen.

4

Press 🔘 to end the call.

If de-access code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the display shows De-Access Code:. Do one of the following.

- Enter the de-access code and press 🔘 to proceed. The radio returns to the previous screen.
- Press the **One Touch Access** button. If the entry for the **One Touch Access** button is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds.

The DTMF tone sounds with each keypad press, and the display shows Ending Phone Call.

If the end-call-setup is successful, a tone sounds and the display shows Call Ended.

If the end-call-setup is unsuccessful, your radio returns to the Phone Call screen. Repeat Step *4* or wait for the telephone user to end the call.

Note:
When the telephone user ends the call, a tone sounds and the display shows Call Ended.

If the call ends while you are entering the extra digits requested by the Phone Call, your radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

During channel access, press 🔘 to dismiss the call attempt. A tone sounds to indicate success.

During the call, if you press the **One Touch Access** button with the deaccess code preconfigured or enter the deaccess code as the input for extra digits, your radio attempts to end the call.

The access or deaccess code cannot be more than 10 characters.

Making a Private Call with a One Touch Call Button

Note:
Programmable buttons press must be initiated from the Home screen.

The One Touch Call feature allows you to easily make a Private Call to a pre-defined Private Call alias or ID. This feature can be assigned to a short or long programmable button press.

You can ONLY have one alias or ID assigned to a One Touch Call button. Your radio can have multiple One Touch Call buttons programmed.

1   Press the programmed **One Touch Call** button to make a Private Call to the pre-defined Private Call alias or ID.

2   Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3   Press the **PTT** button to make the call.

    The LED lights up solid green.

    The display shows the Private Call alias or ID.

4   Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled) and speak clearly into the microphone.

5   Release the **PTT** button to listen.

    When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green.

6   If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you will hear a short alert tone the moment the target radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

    If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

Making a Group, Private or All Call with the Programmable Number Key

The Programmable Number Key feature allows you to make a Group, Private or All Call to a predefined alias or ID easily. This feature can be assigned to all the available number keys on a keypad.

You can **ONLY** have one alias or ID assigned to a number key, but you can have more than one number key associated to an alias or ID.

1   Long press the programmed number key, when you are on the Home screen, to make a Group, Private or All Call to the predefined alias or ID.

    If the number key is not associated to an entry, a negative indicator tone sounds.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green.

4 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green.

5 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends. Radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

For a Private Call, you hear a short tone when the call ends.

See *Assigning an Entry to a Programmable Number Key* on page 66 for details on assigning an entry to a number key on the keypad.

Stopping a Radio Call

This feature allows you to stop an ongoing Group or Private Call to free the channel for transmission. For example, when a radio experiences a "stuck microphone" condition where the **PTT** button is inadvertently pressed by the user.

Your radio must be programmed to allow you to use this feature.

1 Press the programmed **Transmit Interrupt Remote Dekey** button, while on the relevant channel.
The display shows Remote Dekey.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, the radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows Remote Dekey Success, indicating that the channel is now free.

If unsuccessful, the radio sounds a negative indicator tone and the display shows Remote Dekey Failed.

Talkaround

You can continue to communicate when your repeater is not operating, or when your radio is out of the repeater's range but within talking range of other radios.

This is called "talkaround".

Note:
This feature is not applicable in Capacity Plus and Linked Capacity Plus.

The Talkaround setting is retained even after powering down.

You can toggle between talkaround and repeater modes by pressing the programmed **Repeater/Talkaround** button or using the radio menu as described next.

Note:
This feature is not applicable in Citizens Band channels that are in the same frequency.

1   ⊞OK to access the menu.

2   ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press ⊞OK to select.

3   ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press ⊞OK to select.

4   ⏶ or ⏷ to Talkaround and press ⊞OK to select.

5   Press ⊞OK to enable/disable the Talkaround.

     The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

     The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Advanced Features in Non-Connect Plus Mode

Radio Check

If enabled, this feature allows you to determine if another radio is active in a system without disturbing the user of that radio. No audible or visual notification is shown on the target radio.

This feature is only applicable for subscriber aliases or IDs.

Sending a Radio Check

1 Access the Radio Check feature.

Radio Control	Steps	
Programmed Radio Check button	1	Press the programmed **Radio Check** button.
	2	⏶ or ⏷ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔠OK to select.

Radio Control	Steps	
Menu	1	🔠OK to access the menu.
	2	⏶ or ⏷ to Contacts and press 🔠OK to select.
	3	Use one of the steps described next to select the required subscriber alias or ID:
		• Select the subscriber alias or ID directly.
		• ⏶ or ⏷ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔠OK to select.
		• Use the Manual Dial menu.
		• ⏶ or ⏷ to Manual Dial and press 🔠OK to select.

Radio Control	Steps
	• ⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Number and press 🔳OK to select. • If there was previously dialed ID, the ID appears along with a blinking cursor. Else, the first line of the display shows Radio Number:; the second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to edit/enter the ID, and press 🔳OK to select.
4	⬆ or ⬇ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔳OK to select.
5	⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Check and press 🔳OK to select.

The display shows transitional mini notice, indicating the request is in progress. The LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If the 🔁 button is pressed when the radio is waiting for acknowledgement, a tone sounds, and the radio terminates all retries and exits Radio Check mode.

If Radio Check is successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If Radio Check is unsuccessful, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Radio returns to the subscriber alias or ID screen.

Remote Monitor

Use the Remote Monitor feature to turn on the microphone of a target radio (subscriber alias or IDs only). The green LED will blink once on the target subscriber. You can use this feature to monitor,

57

remotely, any audible activity surrounding the target radio.

Your radio must be programmed to allow you to use this feature.

Initiating Remote Monitor

1 Access the Remote Monitor feature.

Radio Control	Steps	
Program-med Re-mote Mon-itor Button	**1**	Press the programmed **Remote Monitor** button.
	2	⬆ or ⬇ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔲 OK to select.
Menu	**1**	🔲 OK to access the menu
	2	⬆ or ⬇ to Contacts and press 🔲 OK to select

Radio Control	Steps	
	3	⬆ or ⬇ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔲 OK to select.
	4	⬆ or ⬇ to Remote Mon. and press 🔲 OK to select.

The display shows transitional mini notice, indicating the request is in progress. The LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice. Your radio starts playing audio from the monitored radio for a programmed duration and display shows Rem. Monitor. Once the timer expires, the radio sounds an alert tone and the LED turns off.

If unsuccessful, the radio sounds a negative indicator tone the display shows negative mini notice.

Stopping Remote Monitor

Remote Monitor automatically stops after a programmed duration or when there is any user operation on the target radio. Follow the steps below to manually stop Remote Monitor.

1 Press the programmed **Transmit Interrupt Remote Dekey** button.

The display shows transitional mini notice, indicating the request is in progress. The LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, the radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows positive mini notice.

If unsuccessful, the radio sounds a negative indicator tone and the display shows negative mini notice.

Scan Lists

Scan lists are created and assigned to individual channels/groups. Your radio scans for voice activity by cycling through the channel/group sequence specified in the scan list for the current channel/group.

Your radio can support up to 250 scan lists, with a maximum of 16 members in a list. Each scan list supports a mixture of both analog and digital entries.

You can add, delete, or prioritize channels by editing a scan list.

You can attach a new scan list to your radio via Front Panel Programming.

> **Note:**
> This feature is not applicable in Capacity Plus and Linked Capacity Plus.

Viewing an Entry in the Scan List

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Scan and press 🔲 OK to select.

59

3   ▲ or ▼ to Scan List and press 🔲 OK to select.

4   Use ▲ or ▼ to view each member on the list.

The Priority icon appears left of the member's alias, if set, to indicate whether the member is on a Priority 1 or Priority 2 channel list. You **cannot** have multiple Priority 1 or Priority 2 channels in a scan list.

There is no Priority icon if priority is set to **None**.

Editing the Scan List

Adding a New Entry to the Scan List

1   🔲 OK to access the menu.

2   ▲ or ▼ to Scan and press 🔲 OK to select.

3   ▲ or ▼ to Scan List and press 🔲 OK to select.

4   ▲ or ▼ to Add Member and press 🔲 OK to select.

5   ▲ or ▼ to the required alias or ID.

6   Press 🔲 OK to select.

7   ▲ or ▼ to the required priority level and press 🔲 OK to select.
The display shows positive mini notice, followed immediately by Add Another?.

8   Do one of the following:

- ▲ or ▼ to Yes and press 🔲 OK to select, and repeat Steps *5* to *7*.

- ▲ or ▼ to No and press 🔲 OK to save the current list.

Deleting an Entry from the Scan List

1   🔲 OK to access the menu.

60

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Scan and press 🔠OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Scan List and press 🔠OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias or ID.

5 Press 🔠OK to select.

6 ⬆ or ⬇ to Delete and press 🔠OK to select.

7 Do one of the following:

- ⬆ or ⬇ to Yes and press 🔠OK to delete entry. The display shows positive mini notice.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to No and press 🔠OK to return to the previous screen.

8 Repeat Steps *4* to *6* to delete other entries. After deleting all required aliases or IDs, long

press ⟲⌂ to return to the Home screen.

Setting and Editing Priority for an Entry in the Scan List

1 🔠OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Scan and press 🔠OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Scan List and press 🔠OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias or ID.

5 Press 🔠OK to select.

6 ⬆ or ⬇ to Edit Priority and press 🔠OK to select.

7 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required priority level and

press 🔠OK to select.
The display shows positive mini notice before returning to the previous screen.

61

Note:

The Priority icon appears left of the name of the member.

There is no Priority icon if priority is set to **None**.

Scan

When you start a scan, your radio cycles through the programmed scan list for the current channel looking for voice activity.

The LED blinks yellow and the scan icon appears on the status bar.

During a dual mode scan, if you are on a digital channel, and your radio locks onto an analog channel, it automatically switches from digital mode to analog mode for the duration of the call. This is also true for the reverse.

There are two ways of initiating scan:

- **Main Channel Scan (Manual)**: Your radio scans all the channels/groups in your scan list. On entering scan, your radio may (depending on the settings) automatically start on the last scanned

"active" channel/group or on the channel where scan was initiated.

- **Auto Scan (Automatic)**: Your radio automatically starts scanning when you select a channel/group that has Auto Scan enabled.

Note:

This feature is not applicable in Capacity Plus and Linked Capacity Plus.

Starting and Stopping Scan

1 to access the menu.

2 or to Scan and press to select.

3 or to Scan State and press to select.

4 or to required scan state and press to select.

- The display shows Scan On when Scan is enabled. The LED blinks yellow and the scan icon appears.

- The display shows `Scan Off` if Scan is disabled. The LED turns off and the scan icon disappears.

Responding to a Transmission During a Scan

During scanning, your radio stops on a channel/group where activity is detected. The radio stays on that channel for a programmed time period known as "hang time".

1 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

🔵 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond.

2 Press the **PTT** button during hang time.
The LED lights up solid green.

3 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

If you do not respond within the hang time, the radio returns to scanning other channels/groups.

Deleting a Nuisance Channel

If a channel continually generates unwanted calls or noise (termed a "nuisance" channel), you can temporarily remove the unwanted channel from the scan list.

This capability does not apply to the channel designated as the Selected Channel.

Deleting a "nuisance" channel is **only** possible through the programmed **Nuisance Channel Delete** button. This feature is **not** accessible through the menu.

1 When your radio "locks on to" an unwanted or nuisance channel, press the programmed **Nuisance Channel Delete** button until you hear a tone.

2 Release the **Nuisance Channel Delete** button. The nuisance channel is deleted.

Restoring a Nuisance Channel

To restore the deleted nuisance channel, do one of the following:

- Turn the radio off and then power it on again.

63

- Stop and restart a scan via the programmed **Scan** button or menu.
- Change the channel via the **Channel Up/Down** buttons.

Vote Scan 🔴

Vote Scan provides you with wide area coverage in areas where there are multiple base stations transmitting identical information on different analog channels.

Your radio scans analog channels of multiple base stations and performs a voting process to select the strongest received signal. Once that is established, your radio unmutes to transmissions from that base station.

The LED blinks yellow and the vote scan icon appears on the status bar.

To respond to a transmission during a Vote Scan, follow the same procedures as *Responding to a Transmission During a Scan* on page 63.

Contact Settings

Contacts provides "address-book" capabilities on your radio. Each entry corresponds to an alias or ID that you use to initiate a call.

Each entry, depending on context, associates with one of five types of calls: Group Call, Private Call, All Call, PC Call or Dispatch Call.

PC Call and Dispatch Call are data-related. They are only available with the applications. Refer to the data applications documentation for more information.

📝 **Note:**
If the Privacy feature is enabled on a channel, you can make privacy-enabled Group Call, Private Call, and All Call on that channel. Only target radios with the same Privacy Key, or the same Key Value and Key ID as your radio will be able to unscramble the transmission.

See *Privacy* on page 99 for more information.

Additionally, Contacts menu allows you to assign each entry to a programmable number key or more on a keypad microphone. If an entry is assigned to a

number key, your radio can perform a quick dial on the entry.

Your radio supports two Contacts lists, one for Analog contacts and one for Digital contacts, with a maximum of 500 members for Analog and 1000 for Digital on each Contacts list respectively.

Each entry within Contacts displays the following information:

- Call Type
- Call Alias
- Call ID

Note:

You can add or edit subscriber IDs for the Digital Contacts list. Deleting subscriber IDs can only be performed by your dealer.

For the Analog Contacts list, you can only view the subscriber IDs, edit the subscriber IDs, and initiate a Call Alert. Adding and deleting capabilities can only be performed by your dealer.

Making a Group Call from Contacts

1 ⌷⌷ OK to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Contacts and press ⌷⌷ OK to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required group alias or ID.

4 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

5 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green.

6 Release the **PTT** button to listen.
When any user in the group responds, the LED blinks green. You see the Group Call icon, the group ID, and the user's ID on your display.

7 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

Making a Private Call from Contacts 🔵

1
    🔲 to access the menu.

2
    ⏶ or ⏷ to Contacts and press 🔲 to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3
    ⏶ or ⏷ to the required subscriber alias or

ID and press 🔲 to select.

4   Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

5   Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green. The display shows the destination alias.

6   Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

7   Release the **PTT** button to listen.
When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green and the display shows the transmitting user's ID.

8 🔵 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

The display shows Call Ended.

Assigning an Entry to a Programmable Number Key 🔵

📝 **Note:**
See *Making a Group, Private or All Call with the Programmable Number Key* on page 53 for details on making a Group, Private or All Call with the programmed number key(s).

1
    🔲 to access the menu.

2
    ⏶ or ⏷ to Contacts and press 🔲 to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias or ID and press 🔲 OK to select.

---

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Program Key` and press 🔲 OK to select.

---

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to the desired number key and press 🔲 OK to select.

If the number key is currently assigned to another entry, the display shows `The Key is Already Assigned` and then, the first line of the display shows `Overwrite?`. Do one of the following.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to `Yes` and press 🔲 OK to overwrite the number key assignment.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to `No` and press 🔲 OK to return to the previous step.

Each entry can be associated to different number keys. You see a ✔ before each number key that is assigned to an entry. If the ✔ is before `Empty`, that number key is not assigned.

If a number key is assigned to an entry in a particular mode, this feature is not supported when you long press the number key in another mode.

The radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows positive mini notice.

The screen automatically returns to the previous menu.

Removing the Association between Entry and Programmable Number Key 🔘

1 Access the required alias or ID via:

Radio Control	Steps
Programmed number key	Long press the programmed number key to the required alias or ID; press 🔲 OK to select.
Menu	**1** 🔲 OK to access the menu.

67

Radio Control	Steps
2	⏶ or ⏷ to Contacts and press 🖩OK to select. The entries are alphabetically sorted.
3	⏶ or ⏷ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🖩OK to select.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Program Key and press 🖩OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Empty and press 🖩OK to select. The first line of the display shows Clear from all keys? .

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to Yes and press 🖩OK to select.

Note:
When an entry is deleted, the association between the entry and its programmed number key(s) is removed.

The radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows positive mini notice.

The screen automatically returns to the previous menu.

Adding a New Contact

1 🖩OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Contacts and press 🖩OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to New Contact and press 🖩OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required contact type, either Radio Contact or Phone Contact, and press 🖩OK to select.

5 Use the keypad to enter the contact number and press 🔳OK to confirm.

6 Use the keypad to enter the contact name and press 🔳OK to confirm.

7 If adding a Radio Contact, 🔼 or 🔽 to the required ringer type and press 🔳OK to select.
The radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows positive mini notice.

Setting a Default Contact 🔴

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Contacts and press 🔳OK to select.

3 🔼 or 🔽 to the required alias or ID and press 🔳OK to select.

4 🔼 or 🔽 to Set as Default and press 🔳OK to select.

The radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows positive mini notice.

A ✔ appears beside the selected default alias or ID.

Call Indicator Settings

Activating and Deactivating Call Ringers for Call Alert 🔵

You can select, or turn on or off ringing tones for a received Call Alert.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔳OK to select.

3 🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press 🔳OK to select.

69

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Tones/Alert` and press 🔳OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Call Ringers` and press 🔳OK to select.

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Call Alert` and press 🔳OK to select.

The current tone is indicated by a ✓.

7 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required tone and press 🔳OK to select.

✔ appears beside selected tone.

Activating and Deactivating Call Ringers for Private Calls 🔔

You can turn on or off the ringing tones for a received Private Call.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press 🔳OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press 🔳OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Tones/Alerts` and press 🔳OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Call Ringers` and press 🔳OK to select.

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Private Call` and press 🔳OK to select.

7 Press 🔳OK to enable/disable the Private Call ringing tones.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled, if Private Call ringing tones are enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled, if Private Call ringing tones are disabled.

Activating and Deactivating Call Ringers for Selective Call 🔴

You can select, or turn on or off ringing tones for a received Selective Call.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

4 🔼 or 🔽 to Tones/Alert and press 🔲OK to select.

5 🔼 or 🔽 to Call Ringers and press 🔲OK to select.

6 🔼 or 🔽 to Selective Call and press 🔲OK to select.

The current tone is indicated by a ✔.

7 🔼 or 🔽 to the required tone and press 🔲OK to select.
✔ appears beside selected tone.

Activating and Deactivating Call Ringers for Text Message

You can turn on or off the ringing tones for a received Text Message.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

4 🔼 or 🔽 to Tones/Alerts and press 🔲OK to select.

71

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Call Ringers` and press 🔳OK to select.

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Text Message` and press 🔳OK to select.

The current tone is indicated by a ✔.

7 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required tone and press 🔳OK to select.

✔ appears beside selected tone.

Activating and Deactivating Call Ringers for Telemetry Status with Text

You can turn on or off the ringing tones for a received Telemetry Status with Text.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press 🔳OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press 🔳OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Tones/Alerts` and press 🔳OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Call Ringers` and press 🔳OK to select.

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Telemetry` and press 🔳OK to select.

The current tone is indicated by a ✔.

Assigning Ring Styles

You can program your radio to sound one of ten predefined ringing tones when receiving a Call Alert or a Text Message from a particular contact.

The radio sounds out each ring style as you navigate through the list.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Contacts and press 🔳OK to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required alias or ID and press 🔳OK to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to Edit and press 🔳OK to select.

5 ⌃ or ⌄ to Edit Ringtone and press 🔳OK to select.

6 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required tone and press 🔳OK to select. ✔ appears beside selected tone.

Escalating Alarm Tone Volume

You can program your radio to continually alert you when a radio call remains unanswered. This is done by automatically increasing the alarm tone volume over time. This feature is known as Escalert.

Call Log Features

Your radio keeps track of all recent outgoing, answered, and missed Private Calls. Use the call log feature to view and manage recent calls.

You can perform the following tasks in each of your call lists:

- Store alias or ID to Contacts
- Delete
- View Details

Viewing Recent Calls

The lists are Missed, Answered, and Outgoing.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Call Log and press 🔳OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to preferred list and press 🔳OK to select.

The display shows the most recent entry at the top of the list.

73

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to view the list.

Press the **PTT** button to start a Private Call with the current selected alias or ID.

Deleting a Call from a Call List

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Call Log and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required list and press 🔲 OK to select.

When you select a call list and it contains no entries, the display shows List Empty, and sounds a low tone if Keypad Tones are turned on (see *Turning Keypad Tones On or Off* on page 141).

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required alias or ID and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 ⌃ or ⌄ to Delete Entry? and press 🔲 OK to select.

6 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔲 OK to select Yes to delete the entry. The display shows Entry Deleted.

- ⌃ or ⌄ to No, and press the 🔲 OK button to return to the previous screen.

Viewing Details from a Call List

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Call Log and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required list and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required alias or ID and press 🔲 OK to select.

74

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to View Details and press 🔲OK to select.
Display shows details.

Call Alert Operation

Call Alert paging enables you to alert a specific radio user to call you back when they are able to do so.

This feature is applicable for subscriber aliases or IDs only and is accessible through the menu via Contacts or manual dial.

Receiving and Responding to a Call Alert

When you receive a Call Alert page, you the notification list listing a Call Alert with the alias or ID of the calling radio on the display.

When you hear a repetitive tone and the LED blinks yellow, do one of the following:

- Press the **PTT** button while the display still shows the Call Alert in the Notification List to respond with a Private Call.

- Press 🔄 to exit the Notification List. The alert is moved to the Missed Call Log.

Making a Call Alert from the Contact List

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Contacts and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to Call Alert and press 🔲OK to select.

The display shows Call Alert and the subscriber alias or ID, indicating that the Call Alert has been sent.

The LED lights up solid green when your radio is sending the Call Alert.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is received, the display shows positive mini notice.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is not received, the display shows negative mini notice.

Making a Call Alert with the One Touch Access Button

Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button to make a Call Alert to the predefined alias or ID.

The display shows `Call Alert` and the subscriber alias or ID, indicating that the Call Alert has been sent.

The LED lights up solid green when your radio is sending the Call Alert.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is received, the display shows positive mini notice.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is not received, the display shows negative mini notice.

Emergency Operation

An Emergency Alarm is used to indicate a critical situation. You are able to initiate an Emergency at any time on any screen display even when there is activity on the current channel.

Your dealer can set the duration of a button press for the programmed **Emergency** button, except for long press, which is similar with all other buttons:

| Short press | Between 0.05 seconds and 0.75 seconds. |
| Long press | Between 1.00 second and 3.75 seconds. |

The **Emergency** button is assigned with the Emergency On/Off feature. Check with your dealer for the assigned operation of the **Emergency** button.

Note:
If the short press for the **Emergency** button is assigned to turn on the Emergency mode, then the long press for the **Emergency** button is assigned to exit the Emergency mode.

If the long press for the **Emergency** button is assigned to turn on the Emergency mode, then the short press for the **Emergency** button is assigned to exit the Emergency mode.

Your radio supports **three** Emergency Alarms:

- Emergency Alarm
- Emergency Alarm with Call
- Emergency Alarm with Voice to Follow 🌐

> 📝 **Note:**
> Only one of the Emergency Alarms above can be assigned to the programmed **Emergency** button.

In addition, each alarm has the following types:

- **Regular** – Radio transmits an alarm signal and shows audio and/or visual indicators.
- **Silent** – Radio transmits an alarm signal without any audio or visual indicators. Radio receives calls without any sound through the radio's speaker, until you press the **PTT** button to initiate the call.
- **Silent with Voice** – Radio transmits an alarm signal without any audio or visual indicators, but allow incoming calls to sound through the radio's speaker.

Receiving an Emergency Alarm

On receiving an emergency alarm the emergency icon appears, a tone sounds, the LED blinks red and the radio displays the emergency caller alias. If more than one alarm has occurred all emergency caller aliases are displayed in an Alarm List.

1 When receiving an emergency alarm, do one of the following:

- If a single emergency call alias is displayed, press 🔲 to view more details. Press 🔲 again to view your action details.
- If the multiple emergency caller aliases are displayed in the Alarm List, ⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias and press 🔲 to view more details. Press 🔲 again to view your action items.

2 Press 🔙 and select Yes to exit the Alarm List.

To revisit the Alarm List, press 🔲 to access the menu and select Alarm List.

Responding to an Emergency Alarm

1 In the Alarm List, ⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias.

77

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you will hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is now available for use.

3 Press **PTT** button to transmit non-emergency voice to the same group that the Emergency Alarm was targeted to.

Emergency voice can only be transmitted by the emergency initiating radio. All other radios (including the emergency receiving radio) transmit non-emergency voice.

The LED lights up solid green. Your radio remains in the Emergency mode.

4 Do one of the following:

- Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled) and speak clearly into the microphone.
- Wait for the **PTT** Sidetone to finish (if enabled) and speak clearly into the microphone.

5 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the emergency initiating radio responds, the LED blinks green. You see the Group Call icon, the group ID, and transmitting radio ID on your display.

6 Your radio displays the Alarm List.

Exiting Emergency Mode After Receiving the Emergency Alarm

Exit the Emergency mode by performing one of the following actions:

- Delete the alarm items, see *Deleting an Alarm Item from the Alarm List* for more information.
- Power down the radio.

Sending an Emergency Alarm

This feature allows you to send an Emergency Alarm, a non-voice signal, which triggers an alert indication on a group of radios.

If your radio is set to Silent, it does not display any audio or visual indicators during Emergency mode.

Press the programmed **Emergency On** button.

The display shows one of the following:

- `Tx Alarm` and the destination alias.
- `Tx Telegram` and the destination alias.

The LED lights up solid green and the Emergency icon appears on the Home screen display.

When an Emergency Alarm acknowledgement is received, the Emergency tone sounds and the LED blinks green. The display shows `Alarm Sent`.

If your radio does not receive an Emergency Alarm acknowledgement, and after all retries have been exhausted, a tone sounds and the display shows `Alarm Failed`.

Radio exits the Emergency Alarm mode and returns to the Home screen.

Sending an Emergency Alarm with Call

This feature allows you to send an Emergency Alarm to a group of radios. Upon acknowledgement by a radio within the group, the group of radios can communicate over a programmed Emergency channel.

If your radio is set to Silent, it does not display any audio or visual indicators during Emergency mode, or allow any received calls to sound through the speaker

of the radio, until you press the **PTT** button to initiate the call.

If your radio is set to Silent with Voice, it does not display any audio or visual indicators during Emergency mode, but allow incoming calls to sound through the speaker of the radio. The indicators only appear once you press the **PTT** button to initiate, or respond to, the call.

1 Press the programmed **Emergency On** button or the **Emergency** footswitch.

The display shows `Sending Alarm`, which alternates with your radio ID.

- `Tx Alarm` and the destination alias.
- `Tx Telegram` and the destination alias.

The LED lights up solid green and the Emergency icon appears on the Home screen display.

When an Emergency Alarm acknowledgement is received, the Emergency tone sounds and the LED blinks green. The display shows `Alarm Sent`. Your radio enters the emergency call mode when the display shows `Emergency` and the destination group alias.

79

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green and the Group icon appears on the display.

4 Wait for one of the following tones to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

- The Talk Permit Tone
- The **PTT** Sidetone 🔴

5 Release the **PTT** button to listen.
🔵 If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond.

6 Press the **PTT** button to respond.

7 Once your call ends, press **Emergency Off** button to exit the Emergency mode.

Sending an Emergency Alarm with Voice to Follow 🔵

This feature allows you to send an Emergency Alarm to a group of radios. The microphone of your radio is automatically activated, allowing you to communicate with the group of radios without pressing the **PTT** button.

This activated microphone state is also known as "hot mic".

📝 **Note:**
Your radio cannot detect a non-IMPRES microphone that is attached to the rear accessory connector.

When no microphone is detected at the specified programmed connector, your radio checks the alternative connector. Here, your radio gives priority to the detected microphone. See the table for examples.

Type of microphone connected to...		Program-med Connec-tor*	Radio uses...
Front Connec-tor	Rear Connec-tor		
Non-IM-PRES	Any mi-crophone	Rear	Rear mi-crophone

Type of microphone connected to...		Program-med Connec-tor*	Radio uses...
Front Connec-tor	**Rear Connec-tor**		
Any microphone	Non-IM-PRES	Front	Front microphone
IMPRES	Non-IM-PRES	Rear	Front microphone
Non-IM-PRES	IMPRES	Front	Rear microphone
*Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.			

If your radio has Emergency Cycle Mode enabled, repetitions of hot mic and receiving period are made for a programmed duration.

If you press the **PTT** button during the programmed receiving period, you hear a prohibit tone, indicating that you should release the **PTT** button. The radio ignores the **PTT** press and remains in Emergency mode.

Note:
If you press the **PTT** button during hot mic, and continue to press it after the hot mic duration expires, the radio continues to transmit until you release the **PTT** button.

If your radio is set to Silent, it does not display any audio or visual indicators during Emergency mode, or allow any received calls to sound through the speaker of the radio, until the programmed hot mic transmission period is over, and you press the **PTT** button.

If your radio is set to Silent with Voice, it does not display any audio or visual indicators during Emergency mode when you are making the call with hot mic, but allow sound through the speaker of the radio when the target radio responds after the programmed hot mic transmission period is over. The indicators only appear when you press the **PTT** button.

Note:
If the Emergency Alarm request fails, the radio does not retry to send the request, and enters the hot mic state directly.

1 Press the programmed **Emergency On** button or the **Emergency On** footswitch.
The display shows one of the following:

- `Tx Alarm` and the destination alias.
- `Tx Telegram` and the destination alias.

The LED lights up solid green and the Emergency icon is displayed.

2 Once the display shows `Alarm Sent`, speak clearly into the microphone.

When hot mic has been enabled, the radio automatically transmits without a **PTT** button press until the hot mic duration expires. While transmitting, the LED lights up solid green and the Emergency icon appears on the display.

3 The radio automatically stops transmitting when the cycling duration between hot mic and receiving calls expires, if Emergency Cycle Mode is enabled.

4 Once the hot mic duration expires, the radio automatically stops transmitting. To transmit again, press the **PTT** button.

Reinitiating an Emergency Mode

Note:
This feature is only applicable to the radio sending the Emergency Alarm.

There are two instances where this can happen:

- You change the channel while the radio is in Emergency mode. This exits the Emergency mode. If Emergency Alarm is enabled on this new channel, the radio reinitiates Emergency.
- You press the programmed **Emergency On** button during an Emergency initiation/transmission state. This causes the radio to exit this state, and to reinitiate Emergency.

Exiting Emergency Mode After Sending the Emergency Alarm

Your radio exits Emergency mode when one of the following occurs:

- Emergency Alarm acknowledgement is received (for **Emergency Alarm** only).
- All retries to send the alarm have been exhausted.
- The **Emergency Off** button is pressed.

Note:
If your radio is powered off, it exits the Emergency mode. The radio will not reinitiate the Emergency mode automatically when it is turned on again.

If you change channels when your radio is in Emergency mode to a channel that has no emergency system configured, `No Emergency` is shown on your display.

Text Message Features ⬤

Your radio is able to receive data, for example a text message, from another radio or an e-mail application.

Sending a Quick Text Message

Your radio supports a maximum of 50 Quick Text messages as programmed by your dealer.

While Quick Text messages are predefined, you can edit each message before sending it.

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🔳OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to `Messages` and press 🔳OK to select.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Quick Text` and press 🔳OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to the required and press 🔳OK to select. Press 🔳OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to the required alias or ID and press 🔳OK to select.

The display shows the transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

83

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows the positive mini notice.

If the message is not sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows the negative mini notice.

Sending a Quick Text Message with the One Touch Access Button

Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button to send a predefined Quick Text message to a predefined alias or ID.

The display shows the transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows the positive mini notice.

If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows the negative mini notice.

If the text message fails to send, the radio returns you to the Resend option screen (see *Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages* on page 85).

Accessing the Drafts Folder

The Drafts folder stores a maximum of ten (10) last saved messages. When the folder is full, the next saved text message automatically replaces the oldest text message in the folder.

> **Note:**
> You can edit saved text message before sending it. Only available with a keypad microphone (see *Editing and Sending a Saved Text Message* on page 165. Long press $\bigcirc$ at any time to return to the Home screen.

Viewing a Saved Text Message

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to access the menu. **2** $\blacktriangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Messages and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Drafts and press OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required message and press OK to select.

Deleting a Saved Text Message from Drafts

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** OK to access the menu. **2** ⌃ or ⌄ to Messages and press OK to select.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Drafts and press OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to the required message and press OK to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to Delete and press OK to delete the text message.

Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages

You can select one of the following options while at the Resend option screen:

- Resend
- Forward
- Edit (only available with a keypad microphone. See *Editing a Text Message* on page 167 for more information).

> **Note:**
> If the channel type (i.e. conventional digital or Capacity Plus or Linked Capacity Plus) is not a match, you can only edit and forward a Fail-to-Send message.

85

Resending a Text Message

Press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 88 OK}}$ to resend the same message to the same subscriber/group alias or ID.

If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows the positive mini notice.

If the message cannot be sent, the display shows the negative mini notice.

Forwarding a Text Message

Select Forward to send the message to another subscriber/group alias or ID.

1 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Forward and press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 88 OK}}$ to select.

2 Select the message recipient by $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to

the required alias or ID and press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 88 OK}}$ to select.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Note:
You can also manually select a target radio address (see *Forwarding a Text Message by Manual Dial* on page 166).

Managing Sent Text Messages

Once a message is sent to another radio, it is saved in Sent Items. The most recent sent text message is always added to the top of the Sent Items list.

The Sent Items folder is capable of storing a maximum of thirty (30) last sent messages. When the folder is full, the next sent text message automatically replaces the oldest text message in the folder.

Note:

Long press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 5\^{}}}$ at any time to return to the Home screen.

Viewing a Sent Text Message

1 Access the **Text Message** feature by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** ⊞OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to Messages and press ⊞OK to select.

2   ▲ or ▼ to Sent Items and press ⊞OK to select.

3   ▲ or ▼ to the required message and press ⊞OK to select.

A subject line may be shown if the message is from an e-mail application.

The icon at the top right corner of the screen indicates the status of the message (see *Sent Item Icons* on page 35).

Sending a Sent Text Message

You can select one of the following options while viewing a sent text message:

- Resend
- Forward
- Edit
- Delete

> 🖉 **Note:**
> If the channel type (i.e. conventional digital or Capacity Plus or Linked Capacity Plus) is not a match, you can only edit, forward, or delete a Sent message.

1   Press ⊞OK again while viewing the message.

2   ▲ or ▼ to one of the following options and press ⊞OK to select.

Option	Steps
Forward	Select Forward to send the selected text message to another subscriber/

Option	Steps
	group alias or ID (see *Forwarding a Text Message* on page 86).
Delete	Select Delete to delete the text message.
Resend	Select Resend to resend the selected text message to the same subscriber/group alias or ID.
	The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming that the same message is being sent to the same target radio.
	If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.
	If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.
	If the message fails to send, the radio returns you to the Resend option screen.

Option	Steps
	Press 🔳OK to resend the message to the same subscriber/group alias or ID.
	Note: Changing the volume, and pressing any button, except for 🔳OK , ▲ , or ▼ , returns you to the message.
	The radio exits the Resend option screen if you press the **PTT** button to initiate a Private or Group Call, or to respond to a Group Call. The radio also exits the screen when it receives a text message, an emergency call or alarm, or a call alert.
	The display returns to the Resend option screen if you press the **PTT** button to respond to a Private Call (except when the radio is displaying the Missed Call

Op-tion	Steps
	screen), and at the end of an All Call.

If you exit the message sending screen while the message is being sent, the radio updates the status of the message in the Sent Items folder without providing any indication in the display or via sound.

If the radio changes mode or powers down before the status of the message in Sent Items is updated, the radio cannot complete any In-Progress messages and automatically marks it with a Send Failed icon.

The radio supports a maximum of five (5) In-Progress messages at one time. During this period, the radio cannot send any new message and automatically marks it with a Send Failed icon.

Deleting All Sent Text Messages from Sent Items

1 Access the **Text Message** feature by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Con-trols	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** ⌨ OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to Messages and press ⌨ OK to select.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Sent Items and press ⌨ OK to select.

When you select Sent Items and it contains no text messages, the display shows List Empty, and sounds a low tone if Keypad Tones are turned on (see *Turning Keypad Tones On or Off* on page 141).

3 ▲ or ▼ to Delete All and press ⌨ OK to select.

4 Choose one of the following.

89

- ⬆️ or ⬇️ to Yes and press 🔲OK to select. The display shows positive mini notice.

- ⬆️ or ⬇️ to No and press 🔲OK to return to the previous screen.

Receiving a Text Message

When your radio receives a message, the display shows the alias or ID of the sender and the Message icon.

You can select one of the following options when receiving a text message:

- Read
- Read Later
- Delete

Note:
If the channel type (i.e. conventional digital or Capacity Plus or Linked Capacity Plus) is not a match, you can only forward, delete, or delete all Received messages.

Long press ⟳ at any time to return to the Home screen.

Reading a Text Message

1   ⬆️ or ⬇️ to one of the options described next

and press 🔲OK to select.

Option	Steps
Read?	Choosing this option, opens the selected message in the Inbox. A subject line may be shown if the message is from an e-mail application. Press 🔲OK to return to the Inbox. Press 🔲OK a second time to reply, forward, or delete the text message.
Read Later	Choosing this option, returns you to the screen you were on prior to receiving the text message.
Delete	Choosing this option, deletes the selected text message.

2   ⬆️ or ⬇️ to Read? and press 🔲OK to select.

Selected message in the Inbox opens.

A subject line may be shown if the message is from an e-mail application.

3 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔲 OK to return to the Inbox.

- Press 🔲 OK a second time to reply, forward, or delete the text message.

Managing Received Text Messages

Use the Inbox to manage your text messages. The Inbox is capable of storing a maximum of 30 messages.

Text messages in the Inbox are sorted according to the most recently received.

Your radio supports the following options for text messages:

- Reply (via Quick Text)
- Forward
- Delete
- Delete All

Note:

If the channel type (i.e. conventional digital or Capacity Plus or Linked Capacity Plus) is not a match, you can only forward, delete, or delete all Received messages.

Note:

Long press ⟲🏠 at any time to return to the Home screen.

Viewing a Text Message from the Inbox

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Messages` and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to `Inbox` and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to view the messages.

A subject line may be shown if the message is from an e-mail application.

5 Do one of the following:

91

- Press 🔲OK to select the current message, and

  press 🔲OK again to reply, forward, or delete
  that message.

- Long press ↺ to return to the Home screen.

Viewing a Telemetry Status Text Message from the Inbox

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Messages and press 🔲OK to
select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Inbox and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required message and press

🔲OK to select.

You cannot reply to a Telemetry Status text
message.

The display shows Telemetry: <Status Text
Message>.

5 Long press ↺ to return to the Home screen.

Replying to a Text Message from the Inbox

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🔲OK to access the menu. **2** ⏶ or ⏷ to Messages and press 🔲OK to select.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Inbox and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required message and press

🔲OK to select.

A subject line may be shown if the message is
from an e-mail application.

92

4 Press 🔲 OK once more to access the sub-menu.

5 ▲ or ▼ to Reply and press 🔲 OK to select.

6 ▲ or ▼ to Quick Reply and press 🔲 OK to select.

7 ▲ or ▼ to the required message and press 🔲 OK to select.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

If the message cannot be sent, the radio returns you to the Resend option screen (see *Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages* on page 85).

Deleting a Text Message from the Inbox

1 Access the **Text Message** feature by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🔲 OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to Messages and press 🔲 OK to select.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Inbox and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to the required message and press 🔲 OK to select.

A subject line may be shown if the message is from an e-mail application.

93

4
Press 🔲OK once more to access the sub-menu.

5
⬆ or ⬇ to Delete and press 🔲OK to select.

6
⬆ or ⬇ to Yes and press 🔲OK to select. The display shows positive mini notice and the screen returns to the Inbox.

Deleting All Text Messages from the Inbox

1 Access the **Text Message** feature by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🔲OK to access the menu. **2** ⬆ or ⬇ to Messages and press 🔲OK to select.

2
⬆ or ⬇ to Inbox and press 🔲OK to select.

When you select Inbox and it contains no text messages, the display shows List Empty, and sounds a low tone if Keypad Tones are turned on (see *Turning Keypad Tones On or Off* on page 141).

3
⬆ or ⬇ to Delete All and press 🔲OK to select.

4
⬆ or ⬇ to Yes and press 🔲OK to select. The display shows positive mini notice.

Job Tickets

Your radio is able to receive Job Tickets, which are messages from the dispatcher listing out tasks that need to be performed.

You can respond to Job Tickets in order to sort them into Job Ticket Folders. By default, the folders are "All", "New", "Started", and "Completed". Check with your dealer or system administrator for an additional 10 folders.

94

Your radio supports a maximum of 100 Job Tickets, all of which can be seen in the "All" folder. New Job Tickets and Job Tickets with recent change in state are listed first. Upon reaching the maximum number of Job Tickets, the next Job Ticket automatically replaces the last Job Ticket in your radio.

📝 **Note:**

Job Tickets are retained even after radio is powered down and powered up again.

Your radio will automatically detect and discard the duplicated Job Tickets with the same subject line.

Accessing the Job Ticket Folder

Access the Job Ticket folder.

Radio Control	Steps
Pro-gram-med Job Ticket button	**1** Press the programmed **Job Ticket** button. **2** ⏶ or ⏷ to the required folder and press 🔲OK to select.

Radio Control	Steps
	📝 **Note:** You can also press 🔳# and the corresponding number key (1–9) to access the required folder.
Menu	**1** 🔲OK to access the menu. **2** ⏶ or ⏷ to Job Tickets and press 🔲OK to select. **3** ⏶ or ⏷ to the required folder and press 🔲OK to select. 📝 **Note:** You can also press 🔳# and the corresponding number key (1–9) to access the required folder.

95

Radio Control	Steps
4	$\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to the required Job Ticket and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

Logging In and Out of the Remote Server

This feature allows you to log in and log out of the remote server by using your user ID via the menu.

1 $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to access the menu.

2 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Log In and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

If you are already logged in, menu displays Log Out.

The display shows a transitional mini notice, confirming that you have been logged in successfully.

If you have failed to log in, the display shows a negative mini notice.

Creating and Sending a Job Ticket

Your radio is able to create Job Tickets, which is based on a Job Ticket template and send out tasks that need to be performed.

> **Note:**
> CPS is required to configure the Job Ticket template. Check with your dealer or system administrator to determine how your radio has been programmed.

1 $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to access the menu.

2 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Job Tickets and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

3 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Create Ticket and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

4 Depending on how your radio is configured, do one of the following:

If	Then
If your radio is configured with one Job Ticket template,	**1** Use the keypad to type the required room number and press 🔲OK to select. **2** ⏶ or ⏷ to Room Status and press 🔲OK to select. **3** ⏶ or ⏷ to the required option and press 🔲OK to select.
If your radio is configured with more than one Job Ticket template,	⏶ or ⏷ to the required option and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to Send and press 🔲OK to select.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is sent.

If the message is not sent, the display shows negative mini notice.

Responding to the Job Ticket

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Job Tickets and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required folder and press 🔲OK to select.

You can also press the corresponding number key (1–9) to access the required folder.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required Job Ticket and press 🔲OK to select.

5 Press 🔲OK once more to access the sub-menu.

You can also press the corresponding number key (1–9) to **Quick Reply**.

97

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required Job Ticket and

press 🔳 OK to select.

You can also press the corresponding number key (1–9) to respond to the job ticket.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the message is not sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Deleting a Job Ticket

Delete a Job Ticket.

Radio Control	Steps
Pro-grammed Job Ticket button	**1** Press the programmed **Job Ticket** button. **2** ⏶ or ⏷ to All and press 🔳 OK to select.

Radio Control	Steps
Menu	**1** 🔳 OK to access the menu. **2** ⏶ or ⏷ to Job Tickets and press 🔳 OK to select. **3** ⏶ or ⏷ to All and press 🔳 OK to select. **4** ⏶ or ⏷ to the required Job Ticket and press 🔳 OK to select. **Note:** At Step 4, while viewing the Job Ticket, press ✱ to delete. **5** Press 🔳 OK again while viewing the Job Ticket. **6** ⏶ or ⏷ to Delete and press 🔳 OK to select.

Radio Control	Steps
	Note: You can also press to delete.

Privacy

If enabled, this feature helps to prevent eavesdropping by unauthorized users on a channel by the use of a software-based scrambling solution. The signaling and user identification portions of a transmission are not scrambled.

Your radio must have privacy enabled on the channel to send a privacy-enabled transmission, although this is not a necessary requirement for receiving a transmission. While on a privacy-enabled channel, the radio is still able to receive clear (unscrambled) transmissions.

Your radio supports two types of privacy:

- Basic Privacy.
- Enhanced Privacy.

Only one of the privacy types above can be assigned to the radio.

To unscramble a privacy-enabled call or data transmission, your radio must be programmed to have the same Privacy Key (for Basic Privacy), or the same Key Value and Key ID (for Enhanced Privacy) as the transmitting radio.

If your radio receives a scrambled call that is of a different Privacy Key, or a different Key Value and Key ID, you will either hear a garbled transmission (Basic Privacy) or nothing at all (Enhanced Privacy).

Note:
This feature is not applicable in Citizens Band channels that are in the same frequency.

The LED lights up solid green while the radio is transmitting and blinks green rapidly when the radio is receiving an ongoing privacy-enabled transmission.

You can access this feature by performing one of the following actions:

- Press the programmed **Privacy** button to toggle privacy on or off.
- Using the Radio Menu as described by the steps described next.

99

Note:
Some radio models may not offer this Privacy feature. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

1
🔲 OK to access the menu.

2
🔺 or 🔻 to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3
🔺 or 🔻 to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

4
🔺 or 🔻 to Privacy and press 🔲 OK to select.

5
Press 🔲 OK to enable/disable Privacy.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Multi-Site Controls 🌐

These features are applicable when your current radio channel is part of an IP Site Connect or Linked Capacity Plus configuration.

See *IP Site Connect* on page 39 and *Linked Capacity Plus* on page 40 for more details about these configurations.

Starting an Automatic Site Search

Note:
The radio **only** scans for a new site if the current signal is weak or when the radio is unable to detect any signal from the current site. If the RSSI value is strong, the radio remains on the current site.

Radio Controls	Steps
Site Lock On/Off button	Press the programmed **Site Lock On/Off** button to toggle the start/stop automatic site search.

100

Radio Controls	Steps
Radio menu	**1** ⌨OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to `Utilities` and press ⌨OK to select. **3** ▲ or ▼ to `Radio Settings` and press ⌨OK to select. **4** ▲ or ▼ to `Site Roaming` and press ⌨OK to select. **5** ▲ or ▼ to `Site Lock` and press ⌨OK to select.

If the current channel is a multi-site channel with an attached roam list and is out of range, the radio also performs an automatic site search (site is unlocked) during:

- a **PTT** button press.
- data transmission.

A tone sounds and the display shows `Site Unlocked`.

The radio then returns to the Home screen. The display shows the Site Roaming icon and channel alias.

The LED blinks yellow rapidly when the radio is actively searching for a new site, and turns off once the radio locks on to a site.

Stopping an Automatic Site Search

When your radio is actively searching for a new site, you can stop the search by

Radio Controls	Steps
Site Lock On/Off button	
Radio menu	**1** ⌨OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to `Utilities` and press ⌨OK to select.

101

Radio Controls	Steps
	3 ▲ or ▼ to `Radio Settings` and press OK to select.
	4 ▲ or ▼ to `Site Roaming` and press OK to select.
	5 ▲ or ▼ to `Site Lock` and press OK to select.

A tone sounds and the display shows `Site Locked`.

The radio then returns to the Home screen. and the display shows the channel alias.

Starting a Manual Site Search

Start a Manual Site Search by

Radio Controls	Steps
Manual Site Roam button	Press the programmed **Manual Site Roam** button to start the manual site search.
Radio menu	**1** OK to access the menu.
	2 ▲ or ▼ to `Utilities` and press OK to select.
	3 ▲ or ▼ to `Radio Settings` and press OK to select.
	4 ▲ or ▼ to `Site Roaming` and press OK to select.
	5 ▲ or ▼ to `Active Search` and press OK to select.

A tone sounds, the display shows `Finding Site`, and the LED blinks green.

If a new site is found, a tone sounds and the LED turns off. The display shows `Site <Alias> Found`.

If there is no available site within range, a tone sounds and the LED turns off. The display shows `Out of Range`.

If a new site is within range, but the radio is unable to connect to it, a tone sounds and the LED turns off. The display shows `Channel Busy`.

The radio returns to the Home screen.

Security

You can enable or disable any radio in the system. For example, you might want to disable a stolen radio, to prevent the thief from using it, and enable that radio, when it is recovered.

Note:

Performing Radio Disable and Enable is limited to radios with these functions enabled. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Radio Disable

1 Access this feature by

Radio Controls	Steps	
Radio Disable button	**1**	Press the programmed **Radio Disable** button.
	2	⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias or ID and press 🎛 OK to select.
Radio menu	**1**	🎛 OK to access the menu.
	2	⬆ or ⬇ to `Contacts` and press 🎛 OK to select. The entries are alphabetically sorted.
	3	Use one of the steps described next to select the required subscriber alias or ID: • Select the required alias or ID directly.

103

Radio Controls	Steps
	• ⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias or ID and press 🔘 OK to select. • Use the Manual Dial menu. • ⬆ or ⬇ to Manual Dial and press 🔘 OK to select. • ⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Number and press 🔘 OK to select. • The first line of the display shows Radio Number:. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to enter the subscriber alias or ID and press 🔘 OK .

Radio Controls	Steps
4	⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Disable and press 🔘 OK to select.

The display shows Radio Enable: <Subscriber Alias or ID> and the LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, the radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows positive mini notice.

If not successful, the radio sounds a negative indicator tone and the display shows negative mini notice.

Do not press 🔄 during the Radio Disable operation as you will not get an acknowledgement message.

Radio Enable

1 Access this feature by

Radio Controls	Steps
Radio Enable button	**1** Press the programmed **Radio Enable** button. **2** 🔼 or 🔽 to the required alias or ID and press 🔳 OK to select.
Radio menu	**1** 🔳 OK to access the menu. **2** 🔼 or 🔽 to `Contacts` and press 🔳 OK to select. The entries are alphabetically sorted. **3** Use one of the steps described next to select the required subscriber alias or ID • Select the required alias or ID directly.

Radio Controls	Steps

	• 🔼 or 🔽 to the required alias or ID and press 🔳 OK to select.
	• Use the `Manual Dial` menu.
	  • 🔼 or 🔽 to `Manual Dial` and press 🔳 OK to select.
	  • 🔼 or 🔽 to `Radio Number` and press 🔳 OK to select.
	• The first line of the display shows `Radio Number:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to enter the subscriber alias or ID and press 🔳 OK.

105

Radio Controls	Steps
4	▲ or ▼ to `Radio Enable` and press 🖩OK to select.

The display shows `Radio Enable: <Subscriber Alias or ID>` and the LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, the radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows positive mini notice.

If not successful, the radio sounds a negative indicator tone and the display shows negative mini notice.

Do not press 🔄 during the Radio Enable operation as you will not get an acknowledgement message.

Lone Worker

This feature raises an emergency if there is no user activity, such as any radio button press or activation of the channel selector, for a predefined time.

Before raising the emergency, when the inactivity timer expires, the radio warns the user via an audio indicator.

If there is still no acknowledgement by the user before the predefined reminder timer expires, the radio initiates an Emergency Alarm.

Only one of the following Emergency Alarms can be assigned to this feature:

- Emergency Alarm
- Emergency Alarm with Call
- Emergency Alarm with Voice to Follow 🔵

The radio remains in the emergency state allowing voice messages to proceed until action is taken. See *Emergency Operation* on page 76 on ways to exit Emergency.

> **Note:**
> This feature is limited to radios with this function enabled. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Bluetooth Operation

> **Note:**
> If disabled via the CPS, all Bluetooth-related features are disabled and the Bluetooth device database is erased.

This feature allows you to use your radio with a Bluetooth-enabled device (accessory) via a wireless Bluetooth connection. Your radio supports both Motorola and COTS (Commercially available Off-The-Shelf) Bluetooth-enabled devices.

Bluetooth operates within a range of 10 meters (32 feet) line of sight. This is an unobstructed path between your radio and your Bluetooth-enabled device.

It is not recommended that you leave your radio behind and expect your Bluetooth-enabled device to work with a high degree of reliability when they are separated.

At the fringe areas of reception, both voice and tone quality will start to sound "garbled" or "broken". To correct this problem, simply position your radio and Bluetooth-enabled device closer to each other (within the 10-meter/32 feet defined range) to re-establish clear audio reception. Your radio's Bluetooth function has a maximum power of 2.5 mW (4 dBm) at the 10-meter/32 feet range.

Your radio can support up to 3 simultaneous Bluetooth connections with Bluetooth-enabled devices of unique types. For example, a headset, a scanner, and a PTT-Only Device (POD). Multiple connections with Bluetooth-enabled devices of the same type are not supported.

Refer to your respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual for more details on your Bluetooth-enabled device's full capabilities.

Turning Bluetooth On and Off

1   ⊞ OK   to access the menu.

2   ▲ or ▼ to Bluetooth and press ⊞ OK to select.

107

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to My Status and press 🔲OK to select.

The display shows On and Off. The current status is indicated by a ✔.

4 Do one of the following:

- ⬆ or ⬇ to On and press 🔲OK to select. The display shows On and a ✔ appears left of the selected status.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to Off and press 🔲OK to select. The display shows Off and a ✔ appears left of the selected status.

Finding and Connecting to a Bluetooth Device

Do **not** turn off your Bluetooth-enabled device during the finding and connecting operation as this cancels the operation.

1 Turn on your Bluetooth-enabled device and place it in pairing mode. Refer to respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual.

2 On your radio, press 🔲OK to access the menu.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Bluetooth and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to Devices and press 🔲OK to select.

5 Do one of the following:

- ⬆ or ⬇ to the required device and press 🔲OK to select.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to Find Devices to locate available devices. ⬆ or ⬇ to the required device and press 🔲OK to select.

6 ⬆ or ⬇ to Connect and press 🔲OK to select.

Display shows Connecting to <Device>. Your Bluetooth-enabled device may require additional steps to complete the pairing. Refer to respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual.

108

If successful, the radio display shows `<Device>` `Connected`. A tone sounds and ✔ appears besides the connected device. The Bluetooth Connected icon appears on the status bar.

If unsuccessful, the radio display shows `Connecting` `Failed`.

Note:

If pin code is required, use the same entry method as Step *2* in *Accessing the Radio from Password* on page 170.

Finding and Connecting from a Bluetooth Device (Discoverable Mode)

Do not turn off your Bluetooth or your radio during the finding and connecting operation as this may cancel the operation.

1 Turn Bluetooth On.

See *Turning Bluetooth On and Off* on page 107.

2 <kbd>OK</kbd> to access the menu.

3 <kbd>▲</kbd> or <kbd>▼</kbd> to `Bluetooth` and press <kbd>OK</kbd> to select.

4 <kbd>▲</kbd> or <kbd>▼</kbd> to `Find Me` and press <kbd>OK</kbd> to select.

Your radio can now be found by other Bluetooth-enabled devices for a programmed duration. This is called Discoverable Mode.

5 Turn on your Bluetooth-enabled device and pair it with your radio.

Refer to respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual.

Disconnecting from a Bluetooth Device

1 On your radio, press <kbd>OK</kbd> to access the menu.

2 <kbd>▲</kbd> or <kbd>▼</kbd> to `Bluetooth` and press <kbd>OK</kbd> to select.

3 <kbd>▲</kbd> or <kbd>▼</kbd> to `Devices` and press <kbd>OK</kbd> to select.

4 <kbd>▲</kbd> or <kbd>▼</kbd> to the required device and press <kbd>OK</kbd> to select.

109

5 ▲ or ▼ to Disconnect and press 🔲 OK to
select.
Display shows Disconnecting from <Device>.
Your Bluetooth-enabled device may require
additional steps to disconnect. Refer to respective
Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual.

The radio display shows <Device> Disconnected. A
positive indicator tone sounds and ✔ disappears
beside the connected device. The Bluetooth
Connected icon disappears on the status bar.

**Switching Audio Route between Internal Radio Speaker
and Bluetooth Device**

You can toggle audio routing between internal radio
speaker and external Bluetooth-enabled accessory.

Press the programmed **Bluetooth Audio Switch**
button.

- A tone sounds and display shows Route Audio
to Radio.
- A tone sounds and display shows Route Audio
to Bluetooth.

Viewing Device Details

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Bluetooth and press 🔲 OK to
select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Devices and press 🔲 OK to
select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to the required device and press
🔲 OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to View Details and press 🔲 OK
to select.

Deleting Device Name

You can remove a disconnected device from the list
of Bluetooth-enabled devices.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

110

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Bluetooth` and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Devices` and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required device and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Delete` and press 🔲OK to select.
The display shows `Device Deleted`.

Bluetooth Mic Gain

Allows control of the connected Bluetooth-enabled device's microphone gain value.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Bluetooth` and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `BT Mic Gain` and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to the BT Mic Gain type and the current values.

To edit values, press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to increase or to decrease values and press 🔲OK to select.

Notification List

Your radio has a Notification List that collects all your "unread" events on the channel, such as unread text messages, telemetry messages and missed calls. Unread Job Tickets are also stored in the notification list.

The Notification icon appears on the status bar when the Notification List has one or more events.

For TMS and missed call/call alert notification events, the maximum number are 30 TMS and 10 missed calls/call alerts. This maximum number depends on

111

individual feature (job tickets or TMS or missed calls/ call alerts) list capability.

Note:
After the events are read, they are removed from the Notification List.

Accessing the Notification List

1

⌗ OK to access the menu.

2

▲ or ▼ to Notification and press ⌗ OK to select.

3

▲ or ▼ to the required event and press ⌗ OK to select.

Long press ⤾ *to return to the Home Screen.*

Auto-Range Transponder System (ARTS) ⬤

ARTS is an analog-only feature designed to inform you when your radio is out-of-range of other ARTS-equipped radios.

ARTS-equipped radios transmit or receive signals periodically to confirm that they are within range of each other. Your dealer can program your radio to transmit or receive the ARTS signal.

Your radio provides indications of states as follows:

- **First-Time Alert** – A tone sounds and the display shows In Range after the channel alias.
- **ARTS-in-Range Alert** – A tone sounds, if programmed, and the display shows In Range after the channel alias.
- **ARTS-Out-of-Range Alert** – A tone sounds, the LED rapidly blinks red, and the display alternates between Out of Range and the home screen.

Over-the-Air-Programming (OTAP)

Your radio can be updated by your dealer remotely, via OTAP, without needing to be physically connected. Additionally, some settings can also be configured via OTAP.

While undergoing OTAP, the LED blinks green.

112

Note:

When the radio is receiving high volume data, the High Volume Data icon appears and channel is busy. A **PTT** button press at this time may cause a negative tone to sound.

Once the programming is complete, depending on your radio's configuration:

- A tone sounds, the display shows `Updating Restarting`, and your radio restarts (powers off and on again).
- Select between `Restart Now` or `Postpone`. Selecting Postpone allows your radio to return to the previous display, with an OTAP Timer icon visible, for a period of time before the automatic restart occurs.

Upon power up after the automatic restart occurs, the display shows `Sw Update Completed` if the OTAP update is successful or `Sw Update Failed` if the OTAP update is unsuccessful.

See Software Update on page 138 *for your updated software version.*

Wi-Fi Operation

Wi-Fi® is a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Note:

This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

This feature allows you to setup and connect to a Wi-Fi® network. Wi-Fi supports updates for radio firmware, codeplug, and resources such as language packs and voice announcement.

Turning Wi-Fi On or Off

Note:

This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

The programmed **Wi-Fi On or Off** button is assigned via CPS. Check with your dealer or system administrator to determine how your radio has been programmed.

You can turn on or turn off Wi-Fi® by performing one of the following actions.

- Press the programmed **Wi-Fi On or Off** button. Voice Announcement sounds Turning On Wi-Fi or Turning Off Wi-Fi.

- Access this feature via the menu.

    a) Press $\boxed{\text{⊞ OK}}$ to access the menu.

113

b) Press ⬆ or ⬇ to WiFi and press 🔲OK to select.

c) Press ⬆ or ⬇ to WiFi Status and press 🔲OK to select.

Press 🔲OK to turn on Wi-Fi. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

Press 🔲OK to turn off Wi-Fi. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Connecting to a Network Access Point

> ✎ **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

When you turn on Wi-Fi®, the radio scans and connects to a network access point.

You can also connect to a network access point via the menu.

1
Press 🔲OK to access the menu.

2
Press ⬆ or ⬇ to WiFi and press 🔲OK to select.

3
Press ⬆ or ⬇ to Networks and press 🔲OK to select.

4
Press ⬆ or ⬇ to a network access point and press 🔲OK to select.

5
Press ⬆ or ⬇ to Connect and press 🔲OK to select.

6
Enter the password and press 🔲OK .
When the connection is successful, the radio displays a notice and the network access point is saved into the profile list.

Refreshing the Network List

> ✎ **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

114

- Perform the following actions to refresh the network list.

    a) Press 📟 OK to access the menu.

    b) Press 🔼 or 🔽 to `WiFi` and press 📟 OK to select.

    c) Press 🔼 or 🔽 to `Networks` and press 📟 OK to select.
    When you enter the Networks menu, the radio automatically refreshes the network list.

- If you are already in the Networks menu, perform the following action to refresh the network list.

    a) Press 🔼 or 🔽 to `Refresh` and press 📟 OK to select.

    The radio refreshes and displays the latest network list.

Adding a Network

> 📝 **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

If a preferred network is not in the available network list, perform the following actions to add a network.

1 Press 📟 OK to access the menu.

2 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to `WiFi` and press 📟 OK to select.

3 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to `Networks` and press 📟 OK to select.

4 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to `Add Network` and press 📟 OK to select.

5 Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) and press 📟 OK.

6 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to `Open` and press 📟 OK to select.

7 Enter the password and press 📟 OK.

115

The radio displays ✅ to indicate that the network is successfully saved.

Viewing Details of Network Access Points

> **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

Perform the following actions to view details of network access points.

1
Press 🔲OK to access the menu.

2
Press ▲ or ▼ to WiFi and press 🔲OK to select.

3
Press ▲ or ▼ to Networks and press 🔲OK to select.

4
Press ▲ or ▼ to a network access point and press 🔲OK to select.

5
Press ▲ or ▼ to View Details and press 🔲OK to select.

For a connected network access point, the Service Set Identifier (SSID), Security Mode, Media Access Control (MAC) address, and Internet Protocol (IP) address are displayed.

For a non-connected network access point, the Service Set Identifier (SSID) and Security Mode are displayed.

Removing Network Access Points

> **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only. Enterprise network access points that are added via CPS can only be removed via CPS.

Perform the following actions to remove network access points from the profile list.

1
Press 🔲OK to access the menu.

2
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to `WiFi` and press 🖩 OK to select.

3
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to `Networks` and press 🖩 OK to select.

4
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to the selected network access point and press 🖩 OK to select.

5
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to `Remove` and press 🖩 OK to select.

6
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to `Yes` and press 🖩 OK to select.

The radio displays ✅ to indicate that the selected network access point is successfully removed.

Third Party Peripherals Connection Modes

You can select one of the third party peripherals connection modes:

- Motorola
- PC and Audio
- Data Accessory
- Telemetry
- Generic

1
🖩 OK to access the menu.

2
⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press 🖩 OK to select.

3
⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press 🖩 OK to select.

4
⏶ or ⏷ to `Cable Type` and press 🖩 OK to select.

5
⏶ or ⏷ to the required connection mode and press 🖩 OK to select.

The display shows the selected connection mode.

The screen automatically returns to the previous menu.

117

> **Note:**
> You cannot change the connection mode
> while the cable of the third party peripheral
> is still attached to your radio.

Utilities

Setting the Squelch Level

You can adjust your radio's squelch level to filter out
unwanted calls with low signal strength or channels
that have a higher than normal background noise.

Normal is the default. Tight filters out (unwanted)
calls and/or background noise; however, calls from
remote locations may also be filtered out.

> **Note:**
> This feature is not applicable in Citizens Band
> channels that are in the same frequency.

Press the programmed **Squelch** button to toggle
squelch level between normal and tight. Follow the
procedure described next to access this feature via
the radio's menus.

1   🔲OK to access the menu.

2   🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔲OK to
select.

3   🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press
🔲OK to select.

4   🔼 or 🔽 to Squelch and press 🔲OK to
select.

5   🔼 or 🔽 to the required setting and press
🔲OK to select.
✔ appears besides selected setting. Screen
returns to the previous menu.

Setting the Power Level

> **Note:**
> This feature is not applicable in Citizens Band
> channels that are in the same frequency.

You can customize the power setting of the radio to
high or low for each channel.

High enables communication with radios located at a considerable distance from you. Low enables communication with radios in closer proximity.

Press the programmed **Power Level** button to toggle transmit power level between high and low. Follow the procedure described next to access this feature via the radio menu.

1 Press 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 Press ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 Press ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 Press ⏶ or ⏷ to Power and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 Press ⏶ or ⏷ to the required setting and press 🔲 OK to select.

✔ appears beside selected setting. At any time, long press 🔙 to return to the Home screen. Screen returns to the previous menu.

Turning the Option Board Feature(s) On or Off

A channel can support up to 6 option board features. Refer to your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Press the programmed **Option Board Feature** button to toggle the feature on or off.

Identifying Cable Type

You can select the type of cable your radio uses.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

119

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Cable Type` and press 🔠OK to select.

---

5 The current cable type is indicated by a ✓.

Turning the Voice Operating Transmission (VOX) Feature On or Off

This feature allows you to initiate a hands-free voice activated call on a programmed channel. The radio automatically transmits, for a programmed period, whenever the microphone on the VOX-capable accessory detects voice.

> **Note:**
> This feature is not applicable in Citizens Band channels that are in the same frequency.

Pressing the **PTT** button during radio operation will disable VOX. To re-enable VOX, do one of the following:

- Turn the radio off and power it on again.
- Change the channel via the **Scroll Up/Down** buttons.
- Change the channel via **Volume/Channel** Knob.
- Press the programmed **VOX** button to toggle the feature on or off.

- Follow the steps described next to access this feature via the radio menu.

If the Talk Permit Tone feature is enabled (see *Turning the Talk Permit Tone On or Off* on page 122), use a trigger word to initiate the call. Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish before speaking clearly into the microphone.

> **Note:**
> Turning this feature on or off is limited to radios with this function enabled. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

1 🔠OK to access the menu.

---

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Utilities` and press 🔠OK to select.

---

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Radio Settings` and press 🔠OK to select.

---

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to `VOX` and press 🔠OK to select.

5
Press 🔲 OK to disable/enable VOX.

Turning the Radio Tones/Alerts On or Off

You can enable and disable all radio tones and alerts (except for the incoming Emergency alert tone) if needed.

Press the programmed **All Tones/Alerts** button to toggle all tones on or off, or follow the procedure described next to access this feature via the radio menu.

1
🔲 OK to access the menu.

2
⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3
⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

4
⏶ or ⏷ to Tones/Alerts and press 🔲 OK to select.

5
⏶ or ⏷ to All Tones and press 🔲 OK to select.

6
Press 🔲 OK to enable/disable all tones and alerts.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Setting the Tone Alert Volume Offset Level

You can adjust the Tone Alert Volume Offset level if needed. This feature adjusts the volume of the tones/alerts, allowing it to be higher or lower than the voice volume.

1
🔲 OK to access the menu.

2
⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3
⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

121

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to Tones/Alerts and press 🔳OK to select.

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to Vol. Offset and press 🔳OK to select.

6 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required volume value.
The radio sounds a feedback tone with each corresponding volume value.

7 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔳OK to keep the required displayed volume value.

- Press ⟲ to exit without changing the current volume offset settings.

Turning the Talk Permit Tone On or Off

You can enable and disable the Talk Permit Tone if needed.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Utilities and press 🔳OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Settings and press 🔳OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to Tones/Alerts and press 🔳OK to select.

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to Talk Permit and press 🔳OK to select.

6 Press 🔳OK to enable/disable the Talk Permit Tone.

The display shows ✓ beside Enabled.

The ✓ disappears from beside Enabled.

Turning the Power Up Alert Tone On or Off

You can enable and disable the Power Up Alert Tone if needed.

122

1   🔳OK to access the menu.

2   🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔳OK to select.

3   🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press 🔳OK to select.

4   🔼 or 🔽 to Tones/Alerts and press 🔳OK to select.

5   🔼 or 🔽 to Power Up and press 🔳OK to select.

6   Press 🔳OK to enable/disable the Power Up Alert Tone.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Setting the Text Message Alert Tone

You can customize your radio's text message alert tone to Momentary or Repetitive for each entry in the Contacts list.

1   🔳OK to access the menu.

2   🔼 or 🔽 to Contacts and press 🔳OK to select.

3   🔼 or 🔽 to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔳OK to select.

4   🔼 or 🔽 to Message Alert and press 🔳OK to select.
The display shows Momentary and Repetitive.

5   🔼 or 🔽 to the required setting and press 🔳OK to enable.
✔ appears besides selected setting.

123

Changing the Display Mode

You can change radio's display mode between Day or Night, as needed. This affects the color palette of the display.

Change the Display Mode:

Radio Control	Steps
Program-med Dis-play Mode Button	Press the programmed **Display Mode** button.
Menu	**1** ⌨OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press ⌨OK to select. **3** ▲ or ▼ to Radio Set-tings and press ⌨OK to select.

Radio Control	Steps
	4 ▲ or ▼ to Display and press ⌨OK to select. The display shows Day Mode and Night Mode. **5** ▲ or ▼ to the required set-ting and press ⌨OK to enable. ✔ appears besides selected setting.

Adjusting the Display Brightness

You can adjust the display brightness of the radio as needed.

> **Note:**
> Display brightness cannot be adjusted when Auto Brightness is enabled.

Adjust the Display Brightness by performing one of the following actions:

124

Radio Control	Steps
Programmed Display Brightness Button	**1** Press the programmed **Brightness** button. **2** Decrease display brightness by pressing or increase the display brightness by pressing . Select from setting of 1 to 8. Press to confirm your entry.
Menu	**1** to access the menu. **2** or to `Utilities` and press to select. **3** or to `Radio Settings` and press to select. **4** or to `Brightness` and press to select.

Radio Control	Steps
	The display shows a progress bar. **5** Decrease display brightness by pressing or increase the display brightness by pressing . Select from setting of 1 to 8. Press to confirm your entry.

Language

You can set your radio display to be in your required language.

1 to access the menu.

2 or to `Utilities` and press to select.

3 or to `Radio Settings` and press to select.

125

English

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to Languages and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required language and press 🔲OK to enable. ✔ appears beside selected language.

Turning Horns/Lights On or Off

This feature needs to be installed through your radio's rear accessory connector by your dealer.

Your radio is able to notify you of an incoming call via the horns and lights feature. When activated, an incoming call sounds your vehicle's horn and turns on its lights.

Press the programmed **Horns/Lights** button to toggle horns and light feature on or off.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to Horn/Lights and press 🔲OK to select.

5 Press 🔲OK to enable/disable Horns/Lights.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Turning the LED Indicator On or Off

You can enable and disable the LED Indicator if needed.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

126

4   ▲ or ▼ to LED Indicator and press 🔳OK to select.

5   Press 🔳OK to enable/disable the LED Indicator.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Turning the Public Address System On or Off

You can enable and disable the radio's internal public address (PA) system.

Press the programmed **PA On/Off** button to toggle the feature on or off.

Turning the External Public Address System On or Off

You can enable or disable the audio routing between the connected public address (PA) loudspeaker amplifier and the radio's internal public address (PA) system.

Press the programmed **Ext PA On/Off** button to toggle the feature on or off.

Setting Dual Knob Operation Preference

Your radio has a dual-purpose **Volume/Channel Knob**. Disabling the dual-purpose option sets the knob to work as a Volume Knob only.

1   🔳OK to access the menu.

2   ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press 🔳OK to select.

3   ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press 🔳OK to select.

4   ▲ or ▼ to Dual Knob and press 🔳OK to select.

5   The display shows Volume Only and Volume & Ch. ▲ or ▼ to the required setting and press 🔳OK to select.

✔ appears beside selected setting.

Screen returns to the previous menu.

127

Turning the Introduction Screen On or Off

You can enable and disable the Introduction Screen if needed.

1
🔲 OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

4
🔼 or 🔽 to Display and press 🔲 OK to select.

5
🔼 or 🔽 to Intro Screen and press 🔲 OK to select.

6
Press 🔲 OK to enable/disable the Introduction Screen.

The display shows ✓ beside Enabled.

The ✓ disappears from beside Enabled.

Turning the Voice Announcement On or Off

This feature enables the radio to audibly indicate the current Zone or Channel the user has assigned, or programmable button press. This audio indicator can be customized per customer requirements. This is typically useful when the user is in a difficult condition to read the content shown on the display.

Setting the Text-to-Speech Feature

Note:
The Text-to-Speech feature can only be enabled via the MOTOTRBO Customer Programming Software. If enabled, the Voice Announcement feature is automatically disabled, and vice versa. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

This feature enables the radio to audibly indicate the following features:

• Current Channel
• Current Zone
• Programmed button feature on or off

- Content of received text messages
- Content of received Job Tickets

This audio indicator can be customized per customer requirements. This is typically useful when the user is in a difficult condition to read the content shown on the display.

1 🖮 **OK** to access the menu.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🖮 **OK** to select.

3 🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press 🖮 **OK** to select.

4 🔼 or 🔽 to Voice Announcement and press 🖮 **OK** to select.

5 🔼 or 🔽 to any of the following features and press 🖮 **OK** to select.

You can also use ◀ or ▶ to change the selected option.

- All
- Messages
- Job Tickets
- Channel
- Zone
- Program Button

✔ appears beside the selected setting.

Call Forwarding 🔴

You can enable your radio to automatically forward voice calls to another radio.

1 🖮 **OK** to access the menu.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🖮 **OK** to select.

3 🔼 or 🔽 to Call Forward and press 🖮 **OK** to select.

4 Do one of the following:

129

- Press 🔲OK to enable Call Forwarding. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

- Press 🔲OK to disable Call Forwarding. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Menu Timer

Set the period of time your radio stays in the menu before it automatically switches to the Home screen.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to Display and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to Menu Timer and press 🔲OK to select.

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required setting and press 🔲OK to select.

Analog Mic AGC (Mic AGC-A)

This feature controls the your radio's microphone gain automatically while transmitting on an analog system. It suppresses loud audio or boosts soft audio to a preset value in order to provide a consistent level of audio.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to Mic AGC-A and press 🔲OK to select.

5 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔲OK to enable **Mic AGC-A**. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

- Press 🔲OK to disable **Mic AGC-A**. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Digital Mic AGC (Mic AGC-D)

This feature controls the your radio's microphone gain automatically while transmitting on a digital system. It suppresses loud audio or boosts soft audio to a preset value in order to provide a consistent level of audio.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

---

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

---

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

---

4 ▲ or ▼ to Mic AGC-D and press 🔲OK to select.

5 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔲OK to enable **Mic AGC-D**. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

- Press 🔲OK to disable **Mic AGC-D**. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Intelligent Audio

Your radio can automatically adjust its audio volume to overcome background noise in the environment, inclusive of all stationary and non-stationary noise sources. This feature is a Receive-only feature and does not affect Transmit audio.

| 📝 | **Note:** This feature is not applicable during a Bluetooth session. |

Toggle Intelligent Audio On or Off.

Radio Control	Steps
Programmed Intelligent	Press the programmed **Intelligent Audio** button.

131

Radio Control	Steps
Audio Button	
Menu	1 ⌗ OK to access the menu. 2 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press ⌗ OK to select. 3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press ⌗ OK to select. 4 ▲ or ▼ to Intelligent Audio and press ⌗ OK to select. 5 Do one of the following: • Press ⌗ OK to enable Intelligent Audio. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

Radio Control	Steps
	• Press ⌗ OK to disable Intelligent Audio. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Turning the Acoustic Feedback Suppressor Feature On or Off 🔔

This feature allows you to minimize acoustic feedback in received calls.

Toggle the Acoustic Feedback Suppressor Feature On or Off by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Control	Steps
Programmed Acoustic Feedback Suppressor Button	Press the programmed **Acoustic Feedback Suppressor** button.

Radio Control	Steps
Menu	**1** 🔳OK to access the menu. **2** 🔺 or 🔻 to Utilities and press 🔳OK to select. **3** 🔺 or 🔻 to Radio Settings and press 🔳OK to select. **4** 🔺 or 🔻 to AF Suppressor and press 🔳OK to select. **5** Do one of the following: • Press 🔳OK to enable Acoustic Feedback Suppressor. The display shows ✓ beside Enabled. • Press 🔳OK to disable Acoustic Feedback Suppressor. The ✓ disappears from beside Enabled.

Setting the Audio Ambience

You can customize the audio ambience of the radio according to your environment.

Default enables the default factory settings.

Loud enables Noise Suppressor and increases speaker loudness for use in noisy surroundings.

Work Group enables AF Suppressor and disables AGC for use when a group of radios are near to each other.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 🔺 or 🔻 to Utilities and press 🔳OK to select.

3 🔺 or 🔻 to Radio Settings and press 🔳OK to select.

4 🔺 or 🔻 to Audio Ambience and press 🔳OK to select.

133

5 ▲ or ▼ to the required setting and press 🔳 OK to select.

✔ appears beside the selected setting.

Setting the Audio Profiles

You can customize the audio profiles of the radio according to your preference.

Default disables the previously selected audio profile and the radio's audio profile returns to normal.

Level 1, Level 2, and Level 3 are audio profiles intended to compensate for noise-induced hearing loss that is typical for adults in their 40's, 50's, and 60's or over.

Treble Boost, Mid Boost, and Bass Boost are for a tinnier sound, a more nasal sound, and a deeper sound.

1 🔳 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press 🔳 OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press 🔳 OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Audio Profiles and press 🔳 OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to the required setting and press 🔳 OK to select.

✔ appears beside the selected setting.

Turning GPS/GNSS On or Off

Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) is a satellite navigation system that determines the radio's precise location. GNSS includes Global Positioning System (GPS), Global Navigation Satellite System (GLONASS), and BeiDou Navigation Satellite System (BDS).

Press the programmed **GPS/GNSS** button to toggle the feature on or off.

134

Note:
Selected radio models may offer GPS, GLONASS, and BDS. GNSS constellation is configured via CPS. Check with your dealer or system administrator to determine how your radio has been programmed.

1 Press 🔳ОК to access the menu.

2 Press 🔺 or 🔻 to Utilities and press 🔳ОК to select.

3 Press 🔺 or 🔻 to Radio Settings and press 🔳ОК to select.

4 Press 🔺 or 🔻 to GPS and press 🔳ОК to select.

5 Press 🔳ОК to enable/disable GPS/GNSS.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

See *Checking the GPS/GNSS Information* on page for details on retrieving GPS/GNSS information.

Flexible Receive List

Flexible Receive List is a digital-only (currently supported in Capacity Plus and Linked Capacity Plus) feature that allows you to add, delete or edit members on the receive talkgroup list. Your radio can support a maximum of 16 members in the list.

Turning the Flexible Receive List On or Off

You can enable and disable the Flexible Receive List if needed.

Enable the Flexible Receive List by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Control	Steps
Programmed Flexible Receive List Button	Press the programmed **Flexible Receive List** button.
Menu	**1** 🔳ОК to access the menu.

135

Radio Control	Steps
2	▲ or ▼ to `Flexible Rx List` and press OK to select.
3	Press OK to enable or disable the Flexible Receive List feature.

Previous display	Current display
Turn On	Flexible Rx List On
Turn Off	Flexible Rx List Off

Accessing General Radio Information

Your radio contains information on the following:

- Radio Alias and ID
- Firmware and Codeplug Versions
- GPS Information
- Software Update
- Site Information

136

Press ⤺ at any time to return to the previous screen or long press ⤺ to return to the Home screen. The radio exits the current screen once the inactivity timer expires.

Checking the Radio Alias and ID

This feature displays the ID of your radio.

Press the programmed **Radio Alias and ID** button to check your radio alias and ID. You hear a positive indicator tone.

Follow the procedure described next to access this feature via the radio screen.

1 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Utilities` and press OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to `Radio Info` and press OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to `My ID` and press OK to select.

The first line of the display shows the radio alias.
The second line of the display shows the radio ID.

*You can also press the programmed **Radio Alias and ID** button to return to the previous screen.*

Checking the Firmware Version and Codeplug Version

Displays the firmware version on your radio.

1   🔳 OK to access the menu.

2   ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔳 OK to select.

3   ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Info and press 🔳 OK to select.

4   ⏶ or ⏷ to Versions and press 🔳 OK to select.
The display shows the current firmware and codeplug versions.

Checking the GPS/GNSS Information

Displays the GPS/GNSS information on your radio, such as values of:

- Latitude
- Longitude
- Altitude
- Direction
- Velocity
- Horizontal Dilution of Precision (HDOP)
- Satellites
- Version

1   🔳 OK to access the menu.

2   ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔳 OK to select.

3   ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Info and press 🔳 OK to select.

4   ⏶ or ⏷ to GPS Info and press 🔳 OK to select.

137

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required item and press 🔲OK to select.
The display shows the requested GPS/GNSS information.

See *Turning GPS/GNSS On or Off* on page 134 for details on GPS/GNSS.

Software Update

Displays the date and time of the latest software update carried out via Over-the-Air Programming.

📝 **Note:**
Software Update menu is only available after at least one successful OTAP session.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Info and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to SW Update and press 🔲OK to select.
The display shows the date and time of the latest software update.

See Over-the-Air-Programming (OTAP) on page 112 *for details on OTAP session.*

Site Information

Displays the current Linked Capacity Plus site name your radio is on.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Info and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to Site Info and press 🔲OK to select.
The display shows the current Linked Capacity Plus site name.

See Linked Capacity Plus on page 40 for details on Linked Capacity Plus.

Keypad Microphone Features

Using the Keypad

You can use the 3 x 4 alphanumeric keypad on the 4–Way Navigation Keypad Microphone (Motorola part number RMN5127_) to access your radio's features. You can use the keypad to enter subscriber aliases or IDs, and text messages. Many characters require that you press a key multiple times. The next table shows the number of times a key needs to be pressed to generate the required character.

Key	Number of Times Key is Pressed												
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
(1 .,?)	1	.	,	?	!	@	&	'	%	—	:	*	#
(2 ABC)	A	B	C	2									
(DEF 3)	D	E	F	3									
(4 GHI)	G	H	I	4									
(5 JKL)	J	K	L	5									
(MNO 6)	M	N	O	6									

Key	Number of Times Key is Pressed												
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
(7ᴘ�ᴏʀs)	P	Q	R	S	7								
(8ᴛᴜᴠ)	T	U	V	8									
(ᴡxʏz9)	W	X	Y	Z	9								
(0)	0	✏ **Note:** Press to enter "0" and long press to activate the CAPS lock. Another long press to turn off the CAPS lock.											
(✱)	* or del	✏ **Note:** Press during text entry to delete the character. Press during numeric entry to enter a "*".											
(#)	# or space	✏ **Note:** Press during text entry to insert a space. Press during numeric entry to enter a "#". Long press to change text entry method.											

Turning Keypad Tones On or Off

You can enable and disable keypad tones if needed.

141

1 $\boxed{\text{\tiny 跟 OK}}$ to access the menu.

---

2 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Utilities and press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 跟 OK}}$ to select.

---

3 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Radio Settings and press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 跟 OK}}$ to select.

---

4 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Tones/Alerts and press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 跟 OK}}$ to select.

---

5 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Keypad Tones and press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 跟 OK}}$ to select.

---

6 Press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 跟 OK}}$ to enable/disable keypad tones.

The display shows ✓ beside Enabled.

The ✓ disappears from beside Enabled.

Additional Advanced Features

Selecting a Zone by Alias Search

1 $\boxed{\text{\tiny 跟 OK}}$ to access the menu.

---

2 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Zone and press $\boxed{\text{\tiny 跟 OK}}$ to select.

The current zone is displayed and indicated by a ✓.

---

3 Key in the first character of the required zone.
A blinking cursor appears.

---

4 Use the keypad to type the required zone. Press

◀ to move one space to the left. Press ▶ to move

one space to the right. Press the ⊛ key to delete any unwanted characters.Long press ⌗ to change the text entry method.

The first line of the display shows the characters you keyed in. The next lines of the display show the shortlisted search results.

Note:

The alias search is case-insensitive. If there are two or more zones with the same name, the radio displays the zone that is listed first in the zone list.

5 OK to select.

The display shows `<Zone> Selected` momentarily and returns to the selected zone screen.

Initiating a Radio Check by Manual Dial 🔵

1 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Contacts` and press OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to `Manual Dial` and press OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to `Radio Number` and press OK to select.

5 Do one of the following:

- If there was previously dialed ID, the ID appears along with a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to edit the ID. Press OK to select.
- Key in the subscriber alias or ID and press OK .

6 ▲ or ▼ to `Radio Check` and press OK to select.

The display shows transitional mini notice, indicating the request is in progress. The green LED lights up.

7 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

143

If unsuccessful, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Note:

If the 🔄 button is pressed when the radio is waiting for acknowledgement, a tone sounds and the radio terminates all retries and exits Radio Check mode.

Radio returns to the subscriber alias or ID screen.

Initiating a Remote Monitor by Manual Dial 🔵

• If there was previously dialed ID, the ID appears along with a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to edit the ID. Press ⌗ OK to select.

• Key in the subscriber alias or ID and press ⌗ OK .

6

⏶ or ⏷ to Remote Mon. and press ⌗ OK to select.

The display shows transitional mini notice, indicating the request is in progress. The green LED lights up.

7 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice. Your radio starts playing audio from the monitored radio for a programmed duration and display shows Rem. Monitor. Once the timer expires, the radio sounds an alert tone and the LED turns off.

If unsuccessful, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Note:

If the ⌐⌐ button is pressed when the radio is waiting for acknowledgement, a tone sounds and the radio terminates all retries and exits Radio Check mode.

Radio returns to the subscriber alias or ID screen.

Making a Private Call by Manual Dial 🌐

1   `OK` to access the menu.

2   ⏶ or ⏷ to `Contacts` and press `OK` to select.

3   ⏶ or ⏷ to `Manual Dial` and press `OK` to select.

4   ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Number` and press `OK` to select.

5   Do one of the following:

- If there was previously dialed ID, the ID appears along with a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to edit the ID. Press `OK` to select.
- Key in the subscriber alias or ID and press `OK`.

6   Press the **PTT** button to make the call. The green LED lights up. The display show the destination alias.

7   Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled) and speak clearly into the microphone.

8   Release the **PTT** button to listen. When the target radio responds, the green LED blinks.

If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the target radio releases the **PTT** button, indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

If there is no voice activity for a programmed period of time, the call ends.

You hear a short tone. The display shows `Call Ended`.

145

Making a Phone Call by Manual Dial 🔵

1
    🔲 OK to access the menu.

2
    🔼 or 🔽 to Contacts and press 🔲 OK to select.

3
    🔼 or 🔽 to Manual Dial and press 🔲 OK to select.

4
    🔼 or 🔽 to Phone Number and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 Do one of the following:

- The display shows Number:. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to enter a telephone number and press 🔲 OK to proceed.
- If the access code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows Access Code:. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the access code and press 🔲 OK to proceed.

The green LED lights up. The Phone Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The second text line displays the call status.

If successful, the DTMF tone sounds. You hear the dialing tone of the telephone user. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The Phone Call icon remains in the top right corner.

If unsuccessful, a tone sounds and the display shows Phone Call Failed. Your radio returns to the Access Code input screen. If the access code was preconfigured in the Contacts list, the radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

6 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔘 to end the call.

  If deaccess code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows De-Access Code:. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the deaccess code and press 🔲 OK to proceed. The radio returns to the previous screen.

- Press **One Touch Access** button. The DTMF tone sounds. If the entry for the **One Touch Access** button is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds.

The DTMF tone sounds and the display shows Ending Phone Call.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows Call Ended. Your radio returns to the Phone Call screen.

If unsuccessful, your radio returns to the Phone Call screen. Repeat the step above or wait for the telephone user to end the call.

Note:
When you press **PTT** button while in the Phone Contacts screen, a tone sounds and the display shows Press OK to Place Phone Call.

When the telephone user ends the call, a tone sounds and the display shows Call Ended.

If the call ends while you are entering the extra digits requested by the Phone Call,

your radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

During the channel access, press ⟲ to dismiss the call attempt and a tone sounds.

During the call, when you press **One Touch Access** button with the deaccess code preconfigured or enter the deaccess code as the input for extra digits, your radio attempts to end the call.

During channel access and access/ deaccess code or extra digits transmission, you radio responds to **On/Off** button, **Volume Knob**, and **Channel Rocker** only. A tone sounds for every invalid input.

The access or deaccess code cannot be more than 10 characters.

Making a Phone Call with the One Touch Access Button

1 Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button to make a Phone Call to the predefined alias or ID.

147

If the entry for the **One Touch Access** button is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds.

2 If the access code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows `Access Code:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the access code

and `⌨ OK` to proceed.

The green LED lights up. The Phone Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The second text line displays the call status.

If successful, the DTMF tone sounds. You hear the dialing tone of the telephone user. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The Phone Call icon remains in the top right corner.

If unsuccessful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Phone Call Failed`. Your radio returns to the Access Code input screen. If the access code was preconfigured in the Contacts list, the radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

3 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔙 to end the call.

  If deaccess code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows `De-Access Code:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the

  deaccess code and press `⌨ OK` to proceed. The radio returns to the previous screen.

- Press **One Touch Access** button. The DTMF tone sounds. If the entry for the **One Touch Access** button is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds.

The DTMF tone sounds and the display shows `Ending Phone Call`.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Call Ended`. Your radio returns to the Phone Call screen.

If unsuccessful, your radio returns to the Phone Call screen. Repeat the step above or wait for the telephone user to end the call.

Note:

During the channel access, press 🔙 to dismiss the call attempt and a tone sounds.

During the call, when you press **One Touch Access** button with the deaccess code preconfigured or enter the deaccess code as the input for extra digits, your radio attempts to end the call.

During channel access and access/deaccess code or extra digits transmission, you radio responds to **On/Off** button, **Volume Knob**, and **Channel Rocker** only. A tone sounds for every invalid input.

The access or deaccess code cannot be more than 10 characters.

Making a Group, Private or All Call with the Programmable Number Key ⓘ

The Programmable Number Key feature allows you to make a Group, Private or All Call to a predefined alias or ID easily. This feature can be assigned to all the available number keys on a keypad microphone.

You can **ONLY** have one alias or ID assigned to a number key, but you can have more than one number key associated to an alias or ID.

When you are on the Home Screen:

1 Long press the programmed number key to make a Group, Private or All Call to the predefined alias or ID.

If the number key is not associated to an entry, a negative indicator tone sounds.

2 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.

The green LED lights up. The Group/Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The second text line displays the call status for a Private Call or `All Call` for All Call.

3 Wait for one of the following tones to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

- The Talk Permit Tone
- the **PTT** Sidetone (Group Call only).

4 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the green LED blinks. The display shows the destination alias.

5 ⓘ If the Channel Free Indication feature is enabled, you hear a short alert tone the moment the transmitting radio releases the **PTT** button,

149

indicating the channel is free for you to respond. Press the **PTT** button to respond.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends. Radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

For a Private Call, you hear a short tone when the call ends.

See *Assigning an Entry to a Programmable Number Key* on page 66 for details on assigning an entry to a number key on the keypad.

Making a Phone Call with the Programmable Phone Button 📞

1 Press the programmed **Phone** button to enter into the Phone Entry list.

2 △ or ▽ to the required subscriber alias or

ID, and press 🔲 OK to select.

If the access code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows Access Code:. The second line of the display

shows a blinking cursor. Enter the access code

and press the 🔲 OK button to proceed.

The first line of the display shows Calling. The second line of the display shows the subscriber alias or ID, and the Phone Call icon.

If successful, The DTMF tone sounds. You hear the dialing tone of the telephone user. The first line of the display shows the subscriber alias or ID, and the RSSI icon. The second line of the display shows Phone Call and the Phone Call icon,

If unsuccessful, a tone sounds and the display shows Phone Call Failed. Your radio returns to the Access Code input screen. If the access code was preconfigured in the Contacts list, the radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

3 Press the **PTT** to talk and release it to listen. The RSSI icon disappears during transmission.

4 To enter extra digits, if requested by the Phone Call, do one of the following.

- Press any keypad key to begin the input of the extra digits. The first line of the display shows

150

`Extra Digits:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the extra digits

and press the ⌗OK button to proceed. The DTMF tone sounds and the radio returns to the previous screen.

• Press **One Touch Access** button. The DTMF tone sounds. If the entry for the **One Touch Access** button is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds.

---

5 Press ↰ to end the call. If deaccess code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows `De-Access Code:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor.

Enter the deaccess code and press ⌗OK to proceed. The radio returns to the previous screen.

The DTMF tone sounds and the display shows `Ending Phone Call`.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Phone Call Ended`. Your radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

If unsuccessful, your radio returns to the Phone Call screen. Repeat the Step *5* or wait for the telephone user to end the call.

When you press the **PTT** button while in the Phone Contacts screen, as tone sounds and the display shows `Press OK to Place Phone Call`.

When the telephone user ends the call, a tone sounds and the display shows `Phone Call Ended`.

If the call ends while you are entering the extra digits requested by the Phone Call, your radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

Note:

During the channel access, press ↰ to dismiss the call attempt and a tone sounds.

During the call, when you press **One Touch Access** button with the deaccess code preconfigured or enter the deaccess code as the input for extra digits, your radio attempts to end the call.

151

During channel access and access/deaccess code or extra digits transmission, you radio responds to **On/Off** button, **Volume Knob**, and **Channel Rocker** only. A tone sounds for every invalid input.

The access or deaccess code cannot be more than 10 characters.

Making a Phone Call from Contacts 🔘

1 [🔢 OK] to access the menu.

2 [▲] or [▼] to Contacts and press [🔢 OK] to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 Do one of the following:

- [▲] or [▼] to the required subscriber alias or ID.

- [▲] or [▼] to Manual Dial and press [🔢 OK] to select.

[▲] or [▼] to Phone Number and press

[🔢 OK] to select.

The first line of the display shows Phone Number:. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to enter a telephone number.

4 Press [🔢 OK] to select.
If the entry selected is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows Phone Call Invalid #.

5 [▲] or [▼] to Call Phone and press [🔢 OK] to select.

If the access code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows Access Code:. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the access code

and press the [🔢 OK] button to proceed.

The first line of the display shows Calling. The second line of the display shows the subscriber alias or ID, and the Phone Call icon.

If successful, The DTMF tone sounds. You hear the dialing tone of the telephone user. The first line of the display shows the subscriber alias or ID, and the RSSI icon. The second line of the display shows `Phone Call` and the Phone Call icon,

If unsuccessful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Phone Call Failed`. Your radio returns to the Access Code input screen. If the access code was preconfigured in the Contacts list, the radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

6 Press the **PTT** button to talk and release it to listen.
The RSSI icon disappears during transmission.

7 To enter extra digits, if requested by the Phone Call, do one of the following.

- Press any keypad key to begin the input of the extra digits. The first line of the display shows `Extra Digits:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the extra digits and press the 🔲 button to proceed. The DTMF tone sounds and the radio returns to the previous screen.

- Press **One Touch Access** button. The DTMF tone sounds. If the entry for the **One Touch Access** button is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds.

8 Press 🔘 to end the call. If deaccess code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows `De-Access Code:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor.

Enter the deaccess code and press 🔲 to proceed. The radio returns to the previous screen.

The DTMF tone sounds and the display shows `Ending Phone Call`.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Phone Call Ended`. Your radio returns to the Phone Call screen.

If unsuccessful, your radio returns to the Phone Call screen. Repeat the Step *8* or wait for the telephone user to end the call.

When you press the **PTT** button while in the Phone Contacts screen, as tone sounds and the display shows `Press OK to Place Phone Call`.

153

When the telephone user ends the call, a tone sounds and the display shows Phone Call Ended.

If the call ends while you are entering the extra digits requested by the Phone Call, your radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

Note:

During the channel access, press 🔄 to dismiss the call attempt and a tone sounds.

During the call, when you press **One Touch Access** button with the deaccess code preconfigured or enter the deaccess code as the input for extra digits, your radio attempts to end the call.

During channel access and access/deaccess code or extra digits transmission, you radio responds to **On/Off** button, **Volume Knob**, and **Channel Rocker** only. A tone sounds for every invalid input.

The access or deaccess code cannot be more than 10 characters.

Making a Group, Private, Phone or All Call by Alias Search 🔍

1

⌨ OK to access the menu.

2

⬆ or ⬇ to Contacts and press ⌨ OK to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 Do one of the following:

- ⬆ or ⬇ to the required subscriber alias or ID.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to Manual Dial and press ⌨ OK to select.

⬆ or ⬇ to Phone Number and press ⌨ OK to select.

The first line of the display shows Phone Number:. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to enter a telephone number.

154

4 Press 🔘 to select.

If the entry selected is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows `Phone Call Invalid #`.

5 🔼 or 🔽 to `Call Phone` and press 🔘 to select.

If the access code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows `Access Code:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the access code

and press the 🔘 button to proceed.

The first line of the display shows `Calling`. The second line of the display shows the subscriber alias or ID, and the Phone Call icon.

If successful, the DTMF tone sounds. You hear the dialing tone of the telephone user. The first line of the display shows the subscriber alias or ID, and the RSSI icon. The second line of the display shows `Phone Call` and the Phone Call icon,

If unsuccessful, a tone sounds and the display shows `Phone Call Failed`. Your radio returns to the Access Code input screen. If the access code

was preconfigured in the Contacts list, the radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

6 Press the **PTT** button to talk and release it to listen.

The RSSI icon disappears during transmission.

7 To enter extra digits, if requested by the Phone Call, do one of the following.

• Press any keypad key to begin the input of the extra digits. The first line of the display shows `Extra Digits:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Enter the extra digits

and press the 🔘 button to proceed. The DTMF tone sounds and the radio returns to the previous screen.

• Press **One Touch Access** button. The DTMF tone sounds. If the entry for the **One Touch Access** button is empty, a negative indicator tone sounds.

8 Press 🔘 to end the call. If deaccess code was not preconfigured in the Contacts list, the first line of the display shows `De-Access Code:`. The

155

second line of the display shows a blinking cursor.

Enter the deaccess code and press ⌨ OK to proceed. The radio returns to the previous screen.

The DTMF tone sounds and the display shows Ending Phone Call.

If successful, a tone sounds and the display shows Phone Call Ended. Your radio returns to the Phone Call screen.

If unsuccessful, your radio returns to the Phone Call screen. Repeat the Step *8* or wait for the telephone user to end the call.

When you press the **PTT** button while in the Phone Contacts screen, as tone sounds and the display shows Press OK to Place Phone Call.

When the telephone user ends the call, a tone sounds and the display shows Phone Call Ended.

If the call ends while you are entering the extra digits requested by the Phone Call, your radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

Note:

During the channel access, press ⤴ to dismiss the call attempt and a tone sounds.

During the call, when you press **One Touch Access** button with the deaccess code preconfigured or enter the deaccess code as the input for extra digits, your radio attempts to end the call.

During channel access and access/deaccess code or extra digits transmission, you radio responds to **On/Off** button, **Volume Knob**, and **Channel Rocker** only. A tone sounds for every invalid input.

The access or deaccess code cannot be more than 10 characters.

Viewing an Entry in the Scan List by Alias Search

1 ⌨ OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Scan and press ⌨ OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Scan List` and press 🔳OK to select.

---

4 Key in the first character of the required alias. A blinking cursor appears.

---

5 Use the keypad to type the required alias.

Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

Press ▶ to move one space to the right.

Press ⃰ to delete any unwanted characters.

Long press #⃣ to change the text entry method.

The first line of the display show the characters you keyed in. The next lines of the display show the shortlisted search results.

The alias search is case-insensitive. If there are two or more aliases with the same name, the radio displays the alias that is listed first in the Scan list.

Editing the Scan List

Adding a New Entry to the Scan List

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

---

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Scan` and press 🔳OK to select.

---

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Scan List` and press 🔳OK to select.

---

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Add Member` and press 🔳OK to select.

---

5 Key in the first character of the required alias. A blinking cursor appears.

---

6 Use the keypad to type the required alias.

Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

Press ▶ to move one space to the right.

Press ⃰ to delete any unwanted characters.

157

Long press 🔄# to change the text entry method.

The first line of the display show the characters you keyed in. The next lines of the display show the shortlisted search results.

The alias search is case-insensitive. If there are two or more aliases with the same name, the radio displays the alias that is listed first in the Scan list.

7
Press 🔲 OK to select.

8
⬆ or ⬇ to the required priority level and press 🔲 OK to select.
The display shows positive mini notice, followed immediately by Add Another?.

9 Do one of the following:

- ⬆ or ⬇ to Yes and press 🔲 OK to select, to add another entry, and repeat Steps *5* to *8*.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to No and press 🔲 OK to select to save the current list.

158

Deleting an Entry from the Scan List

1
🔲 OK to access the menu.

2
⬆ or ⬇ to Scan and press 🔲 OK to select.

3
⬆ or ⬇ to Scan List and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 Key in the first character of the required alias. A blinking cursor appears.

5 Use the keypad to type the required alias.

Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

Press ▶ to move one space to the right.

Press ⁕◁ to delete any unwanted characters.

Long press 🔄# to change the text entry method.

The first line of the display show the characters you keyed in. The next lines of the display show the shortlisted search results.

The alias search is case-insensitive. If there are two or more aliases with the same name, the radio displays the alias that is listed first in the Scan list.

6
Press 🔲OK to select.

7
🔼 or 🔽 to Delete and press 🔲OK to select.

8 Do one of the following:

• 🔼 or 🔽 to Yes and press 🔲OK to select, to delete the entry. The display shows positive mini notice.

• 🔼 or 🔽 to No and press 🔲OK to select to return to the previous screen.

Repeat Steps *4* to *8* to delete other entries.

After deleting all required aliases or IDs, long press the 🔄 button to return to the Home Screen.

Setting and Editing Priority for an Entry in the Scan List

1
🔲OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Scan and press 🔲OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to Scan List and press 🔲OK to select.

4 Key in the first character of the required alias. A blinking cursor appears.

5 Use the keypad to type the required alias.

Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

Press ▶ to move one space to the right.

Press 🔸 to delete any unwanted characters.

Long press 🔸 to change the text entry method.

The first line of the display show the characters you keyed in. The next lines of the display show the shortlisted search results.

159

The alias search is case-insensitive. If there are two or more aliases with the same name, the radio displays the alias that is listed first in the Scan list.

6
Press 🔳OK to select.

7
▲ or ▼ to Edit Priority and press 🔳OK to select.

8
▲ or ▼ to the required priority level and press 🔳OK to select.

The display shows positive mini notice before returning to the previous screen.

The priority icon appears left of the name of the member.

There is no priority icon if priority is set to **None**.

Storing an Alias or ID from a Call List

1
🔳OK to access the menu.

2
▲ or ▼ to Call Log and press 🔳OK to select.

3
▲ or ▼ to the required list and press 🔳OK to select.

4
▲ or ▼ to the required alias or ID and press 🔳OK to select.

5
▲ or ▼ to Store and press 🔳OK to select. A blinking cursor appears.

6
If needed, key in the alias for the ID and press 🔳OK to select.

The display shows positive mini notice.

You can also store an ID without an alias.

Making a Call Alert by Manual Dial 🔵

1
🔳OK to access the menu.

160

2 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to `Contacts` and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

3 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to `Manual Dial` and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.
A blinking cursor appears.

4 Enter the subscriber ID you want to send the Call Alert to and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$.

5 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to `Call Alert` and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

The display shows `Call Alert` and the subscriber alias or ID, indicating that the Call Alert has been sent.

The green LED lights up when your radio is sending the Call Alert.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is received, the display shows positive mini notice.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is not received, the display shows negative mini notice.

RSSI Values

Your radio shows the Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) icon at the top of your display. This feature allows you to view the RSSI values.

When you are on the Home screen:

1 Press ◀ three times (◀_◀_◀) and immediately press ▶ three times (▶_▶_▶), all within 5 seconds.
The display shows the current RSSI values.

2 Long press the $\boxed{\text{⊃⌂}}$ button to return to the Home screen.
See *Display Icons* on page 31 for details on the RSSI Icon.

Text Messaging 📄

The **maximum** length of characters for sending a text message, including the subject line (seen when receiving message from an e-mail application), depends on CPS configuration which can be configured up to maximum 280 characters. Your radio

161

can receive a text message with **maximum** length of 280 characters.

If user forwards a text message with characters more than the **maximum** length, the text message will be truncated to the **maximum** length.

> **Note:**
> The radio exits the current screen once the inactivity timer expires. Any text message in the writing/editing screen is automatically saved to the Drafts folder.

Writing and Sending a Text Message

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	1 $\boxed{\text{ⅢOK}}$ to access the menu. 2 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Messages and press $\boxed{\text{ⅢOK}}$ to select.

2 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Compose and press $\boxed{\text{ⅢOK}}$ to select.

3 Use the keypad to type your message.

Press $\blacktriangleleft$ to move one space to the left.

Press $\blacktriangleright$ or the $\boxed{\text{⌨#}}$ key to move one space to the right.

Press $\boxed{\text{*◁}}$ to delete any unwanted characters.

4 Press $\boxed{\text{ⅢOK}}$ once message is composed.

5 Do one of the following:

- $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to the required or ID and press $\boxed{\text{ⅢOK}}$ to select.

- $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Manual Dial and press $\boxed{\text{ⅢOK}}$ to select. Key in the subscriber ID and press $\boxed{\text{ⅢOK}}$.

- $\boxed{\text{⤴}}$ to edit the message.

again to discard the message or save it to the Drafts folder.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the message is not sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Note:

If the text message fails to send, the radio return you to the `Resend` option screen (see *Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages* on page 85).

Replying to Text Messages from the Inbox

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.

Radio Controls	Steps
Menu	**1** 　OK　 to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to `Messages` and press 　OK　 to select.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Inbox` and press 　OK　 to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to the required message and press 　OK　 to select.
A subject line may be shown if the message is from an e-mail application.

4 Press 　OK　 once more to access the additional options.

5 ▲ or ▼ to `Reply` and press 　OK　 to select.
A blinking cursor appears.

6 Use the keypad to type your message.

163

Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

Press ▶ to move one space to the right.

Press ⬚✱ to delete any unwanted characters.

Long press ⬚# to change text entry method.

7 Press 🔲OK once message is composed.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the message is not sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

> **Note:**
>
> If the text message fails to send, the radio return you to the Resend option screen (see *Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages* on page 166).

If a subject line is present (for messages received from an e-mail application), you cannot edit it.

Editing a Quick Reply Message

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🔲OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to Messages and press 🔲OK to select.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Quick Reply and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to the required Quick Text and press 🔲OK to select.

A blinking cursor appears.

4 Use the keypad to type your message.

Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

Press ▶ to move one space to the right.

Press ⌨ to delete any unwanted characters.

Long press ⌨ to change text entry method.

5 Press 🔲 OK once message is composed.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the message is not sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Note:

If the text message fails to send, the radio return you to the Resend option screen

Accessing the Drafts Folder

You can save a text message to send it at a later time.

If a **PTT** button press or a mode change causes the radio to exit the text message writing/editing screen while you are in the process of writing or editing a text message, your current text message is automatically saved to the Drafts folder.

The most recent saved text message is always added to the top of the Drafts list. See *Accessing the Drafts Folder*

Note:

Long press 🔘 at any time to return to the Home screen.

Editing and Sending a Saved Text Message

1 Press 🔲 OK again while viewing the message.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Edit and press 🔲 OK to select.

165

A blinking cursor appears.

3 Use the keypad to type your message.

Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

Press ▶ to move one space to the right.

Press ⟨✳⟩ to delete any unwanted characters.

Long press ⟨🔤#⟩ to change text entry method.

4 Press 🔳 OK once message is composed.

5 Do one of the following:

• ⟨▲⟩ or ⟨▼⟩ to the required alias or ID and press 🔳 OK to select.

• ⟨▲⟩ or ⟨▼⟩ to Manual Dial and press 🔳 OK to select.

The first line of the display shows Radio Number:.

Key in the subscriber alias or ID and press 🔳 OK .

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the message is not sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

> 🖋 **Note:**
> If the text message fails to send, it is moved to the Sent Items folder and marked with a Send Failed icon.

Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages

If the message fails to send, the radio returns you to the Resend option screen. You can select one of the following options while at the Resend option screen:

• Forward
• Edit

Forwarding a Text Message by Manual Dial

Select Forward to send the message to another subscriber/group alias or ID.

1 🔼 or 🔽 to Forward and press 🆗 to select.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Manual Dial and press 🆗 to select.
The first line of the display shows Radio Number:

3 Key in the subscriber ID and press 🆗 .

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the message is not sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Editing a Text Message

Select Edit to edit the message before sending it.

Note:
If a subject line is present (for messages received from an e-mail application), you cannot edit it.

1 🔼 or 🔽 to Edit and press 🆗 to select. A blinking cursor appears.

2 Use the keypad to type the required alias.

Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

Press ▶ to move one space to the right.

Press ⌫ to delete any unwanted characters.

Long press 🔣 to change the text entry method.

3 Press 🆗 once message is composed.

4 Do one of the following:

• 🔼 or 🔽 to the required alias or ID and press 🆗 to select.

• 🔼 or 🔽 to Manual Dial and press 🆗 to select

The first line of the display shows Radio Number:.

167

5 Key in the subscriber ID and press ⌨ OK .

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

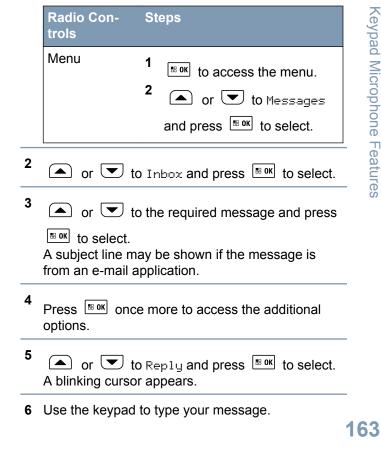If the message is not sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Dual Tone Multi Frequency (DTMF)

The Dual Tone Multi Frequency (DTMF) feature allows the radio to operate in a radio system with an interface to telephone systems.

To initiate a DTMF call.

1 Press and hold the **PTT** button.

2 Enter the desired number, ✱⤸ or ⌗ .

You can turn off the DTMF tone by disabling all radio tones and alerts (see *Turning the Radio Tones/Alerts On or Off* on page 121).

Security ◉

Radio Disable via Manual Dial

1 ⌨ OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Contacts and press ⌨ OK to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Manual Dial and press ⌨ OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Private Call and press ⌨ OK to select.

The first line of the display shows Radio Number:.

5 Key in the subscriber ID and press ⌨ OK .

6 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Disable and press ⌨ OK to select.

The display shows transitional mini notice, indicating the request is in progress. The green LED blinks.

7 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If unsuccessful, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Note:

Do not press 🔄 during the Radio Disable operation as you will not get an acknowledgement message.

Radio Enable via Manual Dial

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Contacts and press 🔲 OK to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Manual Dial and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Private Call and press 🔲 OK to select.
The first line of the display shows Radio Number:.

5 Key in the subscriber ID and press 🔲 OK .

6 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Enable and press 🔲 OK to select.
The display shows Radio Enable and the subscriber alias or ID. The green LED blinks.

7 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If unsuccessful, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

169

> **Note:**
>
> Do not press ⟳ during the Radio Enable operation as you will not get an acknowledgement message.

Password Lock Features

If enabled, this feature only allows you access your radio if the correct password is entered upon powering up.

You can use a keypad microphone or **Scroll Up/Down** buttons to enter password.

Accessing the Radio from Password

1 Power up your radio.
You hear a continuous tone.

2 Do one of the following:

- Enter your current four-digit password via keypad microphone. The display shows ●●●●.

  Press ⊞OK to proceed.

- Enter your current four-digit password. Press

  ⬆ or ⬇ to edit each digit's numeric

value and ⊞OK to enter the selected digit and move to the next digit. Each digit changes to ●.

Press ⊞OK to confirm your selection.

You hear a positive indicator tone for every digit

entered. Press ◀ to remove each ● on the display. You hear a negative indicator tone, if you

press ◀ when the line is empty, or if you press more than four digits.

If the password is correct, your radio proceeds to power up. See *Powering Up the Radio* on page 22.

If the password is incorrect, the display shows Wrong Password. Repeat Step *2*.

After the third incorrect password, the display shows Wrong Password and then, shows Radio Locked. A tone sounds and the LED double blinks yellow.

Your radio enters into locked state for 15 minutes, and responds to inputs from **On/Off Button** and programmed **Backlight** button only.

Note:

The radio is unable to receive any call, including emergency calls, in locked state.

The use of **Emergency** footswitch cancels password input to access radio.

Unlocking the Radio from Locked State

Do one of the following.

Your radio restarts the 15 minutes timer for locked state when you power up.

• Wait for 15 minutes. Repeat Steps *1* to *2* in *Accessing the Radio from Password* on page 170.
• Power up the radio, if you have powered down the radio during locked state.

A tone sounds and the yellow LED double blinks. The display shows Radio Locked.

Wait for 15 minutes. Repeat *Accessing the Radio from Password* on page 170.

Turning the Password Lock On or Off

1   to access the menu.

2 or to Utilities and press to select.

3 or to Radio Settings and press to select.

4 or to Passwd Lock and press to select.

5 Enter a four-digit password.

See Step *2* in *Accessing the Radio from Password* on page 170.

6 If the password is correct, do one of the following.

•
Press to enable Password Lock. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

•
Press to disable Password Lock. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

171

7 If the password is incorrect:

The display shows `Wrong Password` and automatically returns to the previous menu.

Changing the Password

1

 `OK` to access the menu.

2

 or to `Utilities` and press `OK` to select.

3

 or to `Radio Settings` and press `OK` to select.

4

 or to `Passwd Lock` and press `OK` to select.

5 Enter your current four-digit password via keypad microphone.

See Step *2* in *Accessing the Radio from Password* on page 170.

6 Press `OK` to proceed.

If the password is incorrect, the display shows `Wrong Password`, and automatically returns to the previous menu.

7 If the password entered in the previous step is correct, or to `Change Pwd` and press `OK` to select.

8 Enter a new four-digit password via keypad microphone.

See Step *2* in *Accessing the Radio from Password* on page 170.

9 Re-enter the new four-digit password.

See Step *2* in *Accessing the Radio from Password* on page 170.

10 Press `OK` to proceed.

If the reentered password matches the new password entered earlier, the display shows `Password Changed`.

If the reentered password does **NOT** match the new password entered earlier, the display shows `Passwords Do Not Match`.

The screen automatically returns to the previous menu.

Text Entry Configuration

You can configure the following settings for entering text on your radio:

- Word Correct
- Word Predict
- Sentence Cap
- My Words

 Note:

Press 🔄 at any time to return to the previous screen.

Long press 🔄 at any time to return to the Home screen.

The radio exits the current screen once the inactivity timer expires.

Word Correct

Supplies alternative word choices when the word entered into the text editor is not recognized by the in-built dictionary.

1 ⌨ OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press ⌨ OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press ⌨ OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Text Entry and press ⌨ OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to Word Correct and press ⌨ OK to select.

You can also use ◀ or ▶ to change the selected option.

6 Do one of the following:

173

- Press ⌗OK to enable Word Correct. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

- Press ⌗OK to disable Word Correct. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Word Predict

Your radio can learn common word sequences that you often enter. It then predicts the next word you may want to use after you enter the first word of a common word sequence into the text editor.

1 ⌗OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press ⌗OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press ⌗OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Text Entry and press ⌗OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to Word Predict and press ⌗OK to select.

You can also use ◀ or ▶ to change the selected option.

6 Do one of the following:

- Press ⌗OK to enable Word Predict. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

- Press ⌗OK to disable Word Predict. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Sentence Cap

Automatically enables capitalization for the first letter in the first word for every new sentence.

1 ⌗OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press ⌗OK to select.

174

3 ▲ or ▼ to `Radio Settings` and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to `Text Entry` and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to `Sentence Cap` and press 🔲 OK to select.

You can also use ◀ or ▶ to change the selected option.

6 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔲 OK to enable Sentence Cap. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

- Press 🔲 OK to disable Sentence Cap. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Viewing Custom Words

You can add your own custom words into your radio's in-built dictionary. Your radio maintains a list to contain these words.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Utilities` and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to `Radio Settings` and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to `Text Entry` and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to `My Words` and press 🔲 OK to select.

6 ▲ or ▼ to `List of Words` and press 🔲 OK to select.
Display shows the list of custom words.

Editing Custom Word

You can edit the custom words saved in your radio.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

175

English

2
⊙ or ⊙ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3
⊙ or ⊙ to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

4
⊙ or ⊙ to Text Entry and press 🔲 OK to select.

5
⊙ or ⊙ to My Words and press 🔲 OK to select.

6
⊙ or ⊙ to List of Words and press 🔲 OK to select.
Display shows the list of custom words.

7
⊙ or ⊙ to the required word and press 🔲 OK to select.

8
⊙ or ⊙ to Edit and press 🔲 OK to select.

9 Use the keypad to edit your custom word.

- Press ◀ to move one space to the left.

- Press ▶ or 🔘 to move one space to the right.

- Press 🔘 to delete any unwanted characters.

- Long press 🔘 to change text entry method.

10
Press 🔲 OK once your custom word is complete.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your custom word is being saved.

If the custom word is saved, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the custom word is not saved, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Adding Custom Words

You can add your own custom words into your radio's in-built dictionary.

1
🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to Utilities and press $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ to select.

3 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to Radio Settings and press $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ to select.

4 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to Text Entry and press $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ to select.

5 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to My Words and press $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ to select.

6 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to Add New Word and press $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ to select.
Display shows the list of custom words.

7 Use the keypad to edit your custom word.

Press $\blacktriangleleft$ to move one space to the left. Press $\blacktriangleright$ or the $\boxed{\text{\#}}$ key to move one space to the right.

Press the $\boxed{\text{*}}$ key to delete any unwanted characters. Long press $\boxed{\text{\#}}$ to change text entry

method. Press $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ once your custom word is completed.

The display shows transitional mini notice, confirming your custom word is being saved.

If the custom word is saved, a tone sounds and the display shows positive mini notice.

If the custom word is not saved, a low tone sounds and the display shows negative mini notice.

Deleting a Custom Word

You can delete the custom words saved in your radio.

1 $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ to access the menu.

2 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to Utilities and press $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ to select.

3 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to Radio Settings and press $\boxed{\text{ OK}}$ to select.

177

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Text Entry` and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `My Words` and press 🔲OK to select.

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required word and press 🔲OK to select.

7 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Delete` and press 🔲OK to select.

8 Choose one of the following.

- At `Delete Entry?`, press 🔲OK to select `Yes`. The display shows `Entry Deleted`.

- ⏶ or ⏷ to `No` and press 🔲OK to return to the previous screen.

Deleting All Custom Words

You can delete all custom words from your radio's in-built dictionary.

178

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Text Entry` and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `My Words` and press 🔲OK to select.

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Delete All` and press 🔲OK to select.

7 Choose one of the following.

- At `Delete Entry?`, press 🔲OK to select `Yes`. The display shows `All Entries Deleted`.

- $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to No and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to return to the previous screen.

Front Panel Configuration (FPC)

Your radio is able to customize certain feature parameters to enhance the use of your radio.

Entering FPC Mode

Note:

Long press $\boxed{\text{ᗑ}}$ at any time to return to the Home screen.

1

$\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to access the menu.

2

$\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Utilities and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

3

$\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Program Radio and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

Editing FPC Mode Parameters

Use the following buttons as required while navigating through the feature parameters.

- $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$, $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$, $\boxed{\blacktriangleleft}$, $\boxed{\blacktriangleright}$ – Scroll through options, increase/decrease values, or navigate vertically.

- $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ – Select the option or enter a sub-menu.

- $\boxed{\text{ᗑ}}$ – Short-press to return to previous menu or to exit the selection screen. Long-press to return to Home screen.

179

Connect Plus Operations

Additional Radio Controls in Connect Plus Mode

Push-To-Talk (PTT) Button

The **PTT** button on the side of the radio (Ⓐ) serves two basic purposes:

- While a call is in progress, the **PTT** button allows the radio to transmit to other radios in the call.

  Press and hold the **PTT** button to talk. Release the **PTT** button to listen.

The microphone is activated when the **PTT** button is pressed.

- While a call is not in progress, the **PTT** button is used to make a new call (see *Making a Radio Call* on page 196).

If the Talk Permit Tone is enabled, wait until the short alert tone ends before talking.

Programmable Buttons

Your dealer can program the programmable buttons as shortcuts to radio functions depending on the duration of a button press:

Short press   Pressing and releasing rapidly.

Long press   Pressing and holding for the programmed duration.

Press and hold Keeping the button pressed.

Note:
The programmed duration of a button press is applicable for all assignable radio/utility functions or settings. See *Emergency Operation* on page 222 for more information on the programmed duration of the **Emergency** button.

181

Assignable Radio Functions

Bluetooth® Audio Switch	Toggles audio routing between internal radio speaker and external Bluetooth-enabled accessory.
Busy Queue Cancellation	Exits the busy mode when a non-Emergency call in the Busy Queue was initiated. Emergency calls, once accepted into the Busy Queue, cannot be cancelled.
Call Log	Selects the call log list.
Contacts	Provides direct access to the Contacts list.
Emergency On/Off	Depending on the programming, initiates or cancels an emergency.
Horns/Lights	Toggles horns and lights feature on or off.
Intelligent Audio	Toggles intelligent audio on or off.

Manual Dial	Depending on the programming, initiates a Private or Phone Call by keying in any subscriber ID or phone number.
One Touch Access	Directly initiates a predefined Private Call, a Call Alert or a Quick Text message.
Privacy	Toggles privacy on or off.
Radio Check	Determines if a radio is active in a system.
Radio Enable	Allows a target radio to be remotely enabled.
Radio Disable	Allows a target radio to be remotely disabled.
Remote Monitor	Turns on the microphone of a target radio without it giving any indicators.
Roam Request	Requests to search for a different site.
Scan	Toggles scan on or off.

182

Site Lock On/Off	When toggled on, the radio searches the current site only. When toggled off, the radio searches other sites in addition to the current site.
Text Message	Selects the text message menu.
Voice Announcement for Channel	Plays zone and channel announcement voice messages for the current channel. This function is unavailable when Voice Announcement is disabled.
Voice Announcement On/Off	Toggles voice announcement on or off.
Zone	Allows selection from a list of zones.

Assignable Settings or Utility Functions

AF Suppressor	Toggles the Acoustic Feedback Suppressor feature on or off.

All Tones/Alerts	Toggles all tones and alerts on or off.
Backlight Brightness	Adjusts the brightness level.
Channel Up/ Down	Depending on the programming, changes channel to previous or next channel.
Display Mode	Toggles the day/night display mode on or off.
Global Positioning System (GPS)	Toggles the satellite navigation system on or off.
Power Level	Toggles transmit power level between high and low.
Unassigned	Indicates that the button function has not yet been assigned.

Identifying Status Indicators in Connect Plus Mode

Display Icons

183

The following are icons that appear on the display of the radio.

📶	**Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI)** The number of bars displayed represents the radio signal strength. Four bars indicate the strongest signal. This icon is only displayed while receiving.
ᛒ	**Bluetooth** The Bluetooth feature is enabled but there is no remote Bluetooth device connected.
ᛒ	**Bluetooth Connected** The Bluetooth feature is enabled. The icon stays lit when a remote Bluetooth device is connected.
★	Notification List has items to review.
L or **H**	**Power Level**

	Radio is set at Low power or Radio is set at High power.
	Tones Disable Tones are turned off.
	Option Board The Option Board is enabled.
	Option Board Non-Function The Option Board is disabled.
	GPS/GNSS Available The GPS/GNSS feature is enabled. The icon stays lit when a position fix is available.
	GPS/GNSS Not Available/Out of Range The GPS/GNSS feature is enabled but is not receiving data from the satellite.

	Scan
	Scan feature is enabled.
	Emergency
	Radio is in Emergency mode.
	Secure
	The Privacy feature is enabled.
	Unsecure
	The Privacy feature is disabled.
	Site Roaming
	The site roaming feature is enabled.
	Wi-Fi Excellent[6]
	Wi-Fi signal is excellent.
	Wi-Fi Good[6]
	Wi-Fi signal is good.

	Wi-Fi Average[6]
	Wi-Fi signal is average.
	Wi-Fi Poor[6]
	Wi-Fi signal is poor.
	Wi-Fi Unavailable[6]
	Wi-Fi signal is unavailable.

Call Icons

The following icons appear on the radio's display during a call. These icons also appear in the Contacts list to indicate ID type.

	Private Call
	Indicates a Private Call in progress. In the Contacts list, it indicates a subscriber alias (name) or ID (number).

---

6   Only applicable for XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e

185

Group Call/Site All Call

Indicates a Group Call or Site All Call in progress. In the Contacts list, it indicates a group alias (name) or ID (number).

Phone Call as Private Call

Indicates a Phone Call as Private Call in progress.

Dispatch Call

The Dispatch Call contact type is used to send a text message to a dispatcher PC through a third-party Text Message Server.

Advanced Menu Icons

The following icons appear beside menu items that offer a choice between two options or as an indication that there is a sub-menu offering two options.

Checkbox (Empty)

Indicates the option is not selected.

Checkbox (Checked)

Indicates the option is selected.

Solid Black Box

Indicates the option selected for the menu item with a sub-menu.

Sent Item Icons

The following icons appear at the top right corner of the radio's display in the Sent Items folder.

Sent Successfully

OR

The text message is sent successfully.

Bluetooth Device Icons

The following icons also appear next to items in the list of Bluetooth-enabled devices available to indicate the device type.

186

	Bluetooth Data Device Bluetooth-enabled data device, such as a scanner.
	Bluetooth Audio Device Bluetooth-enabled audio device, such as a headset.
	Bluetooth PTT Device Bluetooth-enabled PTT device, such as a PTT-Only Device (POD).

LED Indicator

The LED indicator (Ⓐ) shows the operational status of your radio.

Blinking red	Radio is transmitting at low battery condition, receiving an emergency transmission or has failed the self-test upon powering up, or has moved out of range if radio is configured with Auto-Range Transponder System.
Rapidly blinking red	Radio is receiving over-the-air file transfer (Option Board firmware file, Network Frequency file or Option Board Codeplug file) or upgrading to a new Option Board firmware file.
Blinking green and yellow	Radio is receiving a Call Alert, received a text message or Scan is enabled and is receiving activity.

187

Solid yellow	Radio is in Bluetooth Discoverable Mode.
Double blinking yellow	Radio is actively searching for a new site.
Blinking yellow	Radio is receiving a Call Alert or Scan is enabled and is idle (radio will remain muted to any activity).
Solid green	Radio is powering up or transmitting.
Blinking green	Radio is powering up, receiving a non-privacy- enabled call or data.
Double blinking green	Radio is receiving a privacy-enabled call.

Indicator Tones

High pitched tone	☐	Low pitched tone	■

	Positive Indicator Tone
	Negative Indicator Tone

Alert Tones

Alert tones provide you with audible indications of the status, or response to data received on the radio.

Continuous Tone	A monotone sound. Sounds continuously until termination.
Periodic Tone	Sounds periodically depending on the duration set by the radio. Tone starts, stops, and repeats itself.
Repetitive Tone	A single tone that repeats itself until it is terminated by the user.
Momentary Tone	Sounds only once for a short period of time defined by the radio.

Switching Between Connect Plus and Non-Connect Plus Modes

To switch to a non-Connect Plus mode, you must change to another zone, if programmed by your

dealer or system administrator. Check with your dealer or system administrator to see if your radio has been programmed with non-Connect Plus zones, and what features are available while operating in non-Connect Plus zones.

Making and Receiving Calls in Connect Plus Mode

Selecting a Site

A site provides coverage for a specific area. A Connect Plus site has a site controller and a maximum of 15 repeaters. In a multi-site network, the Connect Plus radio will automatically search for a new site when the signal level from the current site drops to an unacceptable level.

Roam Request

A Roam Request tells the radio to search for a different site, even if the signal from the current site is acceptable.

If there are no sites available,

- The radio display shows Searching and continues to search through the list of sites.
- The radio will return to the previous site, if the previous site is still available.

> **Note:**
> This is programmed by your dealer.

Press the programmed **Roam Request** button. You hear a tone, indicating the radio has switched to a new site. The display shows Site ID <Site Number>.

Site Lock On/Off

When toggled on, the radio searches the current site only. When toggled off, the radio searches other sites in addition to the current site.

Press the programmed **Site Lock** button.

- You hear a positive indicator tone, indicating the radio has locked to the current site. The display shows Site Locked.
- You hear a negative indicator tone, indicating the radio is unlocked. The display shows Site Unlocked.

Site Restriction

Your Connect Plus radio system administrator has the ability to decide which network sites your radio is and is not allowed to use. Your radio does not need to be reprogrammed to change the list of allowed and disallowed sites. If your radio attempts to register at a disallowed site, you see a brief message stating:

190

`Site <number given> Not Allowed`. The radio then searches for a different network site.

Selecting a Zone

The radio can be programmed with a maximum of 16 Connect Plus Zones and each Connect Plus zone contains a maximum of 16 assignable positions on the Channel Selector Knob.

Each assignable knob position can be used to start one of the following voice call types:

- Group Call
- Multigroup Call
- Site All Call
- Private Call

1 Access the Zone feature by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Zone button	Press the programmed **Zone** button.
Radio menu	**1** 🔳 OK to access the menu.

Radio Controls	Steps
2	⬆ or ⬇ to `Zone` and press 🔳 OK to select.

The current zone is displayed and indicated by a ✔.

2 Select the required zone.

Radio Control	Steps
⬆ or ⬇	⬆ or ⬇ and scroll to the required zone.

3 Press 🔳 OK to select.
The display shows `<Zone> Selected` momentarily and returns to the selected zone screen.

Using Multiple Networks

If your radio has been programmed to use multiple Connect Plus networks, you can select a different

191

network by switching to the Connect Plus zone that is assigned to the desired network. These network-to-zone assignments are configured by your dealer through radio programming.

Selecting a Call Type

Use the Channel Selector Knob to select a call type. This can be a Group Call, Multi-group Call, Site All Call or Private Call, depending on how your radio is programmed. If you change the Channel Selector Knob to a different position (that has a call type assigned to it), this causes the radio to re-register with the Connect Plus site. The radio registers with the Registration Group ID that has been programmed for the new Channel Selector Knob position call type.

If you select a position that has no call type assigned to it, your radio sounds a continuous tone and the display shows `Unprogrammed`. Your radio does not operate when selected to an unprogrammed channel, use the Channel Selector Knob to select a programmed channel instead.

Once the required zone is displayed (if you have multiple zones in your radio), turn the programmed Channel Selector Knob to select the call type.

Receiving and Responding to a Radio Call

Once the channel, subscriber ID or call type is displayed, you can proceed to receive and respond to calls.

The LED lights up solid green while the radio is transmitting and blinks green when the radio is receiving.

Note:
The LED lights up solid green while the radio is transmitting and double blinks green when the radio is receiving a privacy-enabled call. To unscramble a privacy-enabled call, your radio must have the same Privacy Key, OR the same Key Value and Key ID (programmed by your dealer), as the transmitting radio (the radio you are receiving the call from).

Note:
See *Privacy* on page 239 for more information.

Receiving and Responding to a Group Call

To receive a call from a group of users, your radio must be configured as part of that group.

When you receive a Group Call (while on the Home screen), the LED blinks green.The Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the caller alias. The second text line displays the group call alias. Your radio unmutes and the incoming call sounds through the radio's speaker.

1 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.
The LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for one of the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

3 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

> **Note:**
> See *Making a Group Call* on page 196 for details on making a Group Call.

Receiving and Responding to a Private Call

A Private Call is a call from an individual radio to another individual radio.

When you receive a Private Call, the LED blinks green. The first line of the display shows the

subscriber alias or ID, and the RSSI icon. The second line displays `Private Call` and the Private Call icon. Your radio unmutes and the incoming call sounds through the speaker of the radio.

1 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

2 Press the **PTT** button to respond to the call.
The LED lights up solid green.

3 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

4 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

The display shows `Call Ended`.

See *Making a Private Call* on page 197 for details on making a Private Call.

Receiving a Site All Call

A Site All Call is a call from an individual radio to every radio on the site. It is used to make important announcements requiring the user's full attention.

193

English

When you receive an Site All Call, a tone sounds and the LED blinks green.

The Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the caller alias. The second text line displays `Site All Call`. Your radio unmutes and the incoming call sounds through the radio speaker.

Once the Site All Call ends, the radio returns to the previous screen before receiving the call. A Site All Call does not wait for a predetermined period of time before ending.

You cannot respond to an Site All Call.

Note:

Note:
The radio stops receiving the Site All Call if you switch to a different channel while receiving the call. During a Site All Call, you will **not** be able to use any programmed button functions until the call ends.

Receiving an Inbound Private Phone Call

When you receive an Inbound Private Phone Call, the Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows `Phone Call`.

1 Press and hold the **PTT** button to answer and talk. Release the **PTT** button to listen.

2 Long press 🔄 to end the call.
The first line of the display shows `Ending`. The second line of the display shows `Phone Call....` The display returns to the Phone Call screen.

The display shows `Phone Call Ended`.

Making a Buffered Over-Dial in an Inbound Phone Private Call

During the call, the Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line of the display shows `Phone Call`.

1 Use the keypad to enter the digits and press the

🔳 OK button.

Press ⊛ followed by ⊞ within 2 seconds to insert a pause. The `P` replaces `*` and `#` on the display.

The Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line of the display shows the entered digits.

2 Long press ⤺ to end the call.

The first line of the display shows `Ending`. The second line of the display shows `Phone Call....` The display returns to the Phone Call screen.

The display shows `Phone Call Ended`.

Making a Live Over-Dial in an Inbound Phone Private Call

During the call, the Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line of the display shows `Phone Call`.

1 Press the **PTT** button and use the keypad to enter the digits.
The Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line of the display shows the Live Dial digits.

2 Long press ⤺ to end the call.

The first line of the display shows `Ending`. The second line of the display shows `Phone Call....` The display returns to the Phone Call screen.

The display shows `Phone Call Ended`.

Receiving an Inbound Phone Talkgroup Call

When you receive an Inbound Phone Talkgroup Call, the Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows `Call1`.

Press the **PTT** button to talk and release it to listen.

Inbound Phone Multi-Group Call

When you receive an Inbound Phone Multi-Group Call, the Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows `Multigroup Call`. The radio unmutes and the incoming multi-group call sounds through the radio's speaker.

195

Making a Radio Call

After selecting your channel, you can select a subscriber alias or ID, or group alias or ID by using:

- The Channel Selector Knob.
- A programmed **One Touch Access** button – The One Touch Access feature allows you to make a Private Call to a predefined ID easily. This feature can be assigned to a short or long programmable button press. You can **ONLY** have one ID assigned to a **One Touch Access** button. Your radio can have multiple **One Touch Access** buttons programmed.
- The Contacts list (see *Contacts Settings* on page 214).

Note:
Your radio must have the Privacy feature enabled on the channel to send a privacy-enabled transmission. Only target radios with the same Key Value and Key ID as your radio will be able to unscramble the transmission.

Note:
See *Privacy* on page 239 for more information.

Making a Call with the Channel Selector Knob

Making a Group Call

To make a call to a group of users, your radio must be configured as part of that group.

1 Select the channel with the active group alias or ID. See *Selecting a Call Type* on page 192.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green. The Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the group call alias.

4 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

5 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green, the radio unmutes and the response sounds through the radio's speaker. You see the Group Call icon, the group alias or ID, and transmitting radio alias or ID on your display.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends. Radio returns to the screen you were on prior to initiating the call.

Making a Private Call

While you can receive and/or respond to a Private Call initiated by an authorized individual radio, your radio must be programmed for you to initiate a Private Call.

You will hear a negative indicator tone, when you make a Private Call via the **One Touch Access** button, or the Channel Selector Knob, if this feature is not enabled.

1 Do one of the following.

- Select the channel with the active subscriber alias or ID. See *Selecting a Call Type* on page 192.
- Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.

The LED lights up solid green. The Private Call icon appears on the top right corner. The first text line shows the target subscriber alias. The second text line displays the call status.

4 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

5 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends. You hear a short tone. The display shows Call Ended.

Your radio may be programmed to perform a radio presence check prior to setting up the Private Call. If the target radio is not available, you hear a short tone and see negative mini notice on the display.

Making a Site All Call

This feature allows you to transmit to all users on the site that are currently not engaged in another call. Your radio must be programmed to allow you to use this feature.

197

Users on the channel/site cannot respond to an Site All Call.

1   Select the channel with the active Site All Call group alias. See *Selecting a Call Type* on page 192.

2   Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3   Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
    The LED lights up solid green. The Group Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows `Site All Call`.

4   Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

Making a Multi-group Call

This feature allows you to transmit to all users on multiple groups. Your radio must be programmed to allow you to use this feature.

Note:

Users on the groups cannot respond to a Multi-group Call.

1   Turn the Channel Selector Knob to select the Multi-group alias or ID.

2   Press the **PTT** button to make the call.

    The LED lights up solid green. The display shows the Multi-group alias or ID.

    Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled) and speak clearly into the microphone.

Making a Private Call with a One Touch Call Button

Note:

Programmable buttons press must be initiated from the Home screen.

The One Touch Call feature allows you to easily make a Private Call to a pre-defined Private Call alias or ID. This feature can be assigned to a short or long programmable button press.

You can ONLY have one alias or ID assigned to a One Touch Call button. Your radio can have multiple One Touch Call buttons programmed.

1   Press the programmed **One Touch Call** button to make a Private Call to the pre-defined Private Call alias or ID.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.

The LED lights up solid green.

The display shows the Private Call alias or ID.

4 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled) and speak clearly into the microphone.

5 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

Making a Call with the Programmable Manual Dial Button

Making a Private Call

1 Press the programmed **Manual Dial** button to enter into the Manual Dial screen.
The display shows `Number:`.

2 Use the keypad to enter a subscriber alias or Private ID.

3 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

4 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green. The Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line shows the subscriber alias. The second text line displays the call status.

5 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled) and speak clearly into the microphone.

6 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends. You hear a short tone. The display shows `Call Ended`.

Making an Outbound Private Phone Call with the Programmable Manual Dial Button

1 Press the programmed **Manual Dial** button to enter into the Manual Dial screen.

199

The display shows `Number:`.

2 Use the keypad to enter a telephone number, and

press ⌨ OK to place a call to the entered number.

Press ◀ to delete any unwanted characters. Press

✱ followed by ⌗ within 2 seconds to insert a pause. The `P` replaces ✱ and ⌗ on the display.

If successful, the first line of the display shows `Phone Call`. The second line of the display shows the dialed telephone number.

If an invalid telephone number is selected, the display shows a negative mini notice, `Phone Call Failed`, `Resource Not Available`, or `Invalid Permissions`.

If ⌨ OK is pressed with no telephone number entered, the radio sounds a positive indicator tone then a negative indicator tone. The display remains the same.

3 Long press ↩ to end the call.

The first line of the display shows `Ending`. The second line of the display shows `Phone Call....`

The display shows `Phone Call Ended`.

Making an Outbound Private Phone Call via the Phone Menu

1 ⌨ OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Phone` and press ⌨ OK to select.

3 Press ⌨ OK to select `Manual Dial`.
The first line of the display shows `Number`, the second line of the display shows a blinking cursor.

4 Use the keypad to enter a telephone number, and

press ⌨ OK to place a call to the entered number.

Press ◀ to delete any unwanted characters. Press

✱ followed by ⌗ within 2 seconds to insert a pause. The `P` replaces ✱ and ⌗ on the display.

If successful, the first line of the display shows
`Phone Call`. The second line of the display shows
the dialed telephone number.

If an invalid telephone number is selected, the
display shows a negative mini notice, `Phone Call
Failed`, `Resource Not Available`, or `Invalid
Permissions`.

If 🔲 OK is pressed with no telephone number
entered, the radio sounds a positive indicator tone
then a negative indicator tone. The display
remains the same.

5
Long press 🔘 to end the call.

The first line of the display shows `Ending`. The
second line of the display shows `Phone Call...`.

The display shows `Phone Call Ended`.

Making an Outbound Private Phone Call from Contacts

> **Note:**
> If the Phone Manual Dial is disabled in
> MOTOTRBO Connect Plus Option Board
> CPS, the `Phone Number` item will **not** be
> displayed in the Menu.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to `Contacts` and press 🔲 OK to
select.

3 🔼 or 🔽 to `Manual Dial` and press 🔲 OK to
select.

4 🔼 or 🔽 to `Phone Number` and press 🔲 OK
to select.
The first line of the display shows `Number`, the
second line of the display shows a blinking cursor.

5 Use the keypad to enter a telephone number, and

press 🔲 OK to place a call to the entered number.

If the **PTT** button is pressed, the display shows a
negative mini notice, `Press OK to Send` and
returns to the previous screen.

Press ◀ to delete any unwanted characters. Press

✱ followed by 🔳 within 2 seconds to insert
a pause. The `P` replaces ✱ and ♯ on the display.

201

If successful, the first line of the display shows Phone Call. The second line of the display shows the dialed telephone number.

If 🖩 OK is pressed with no telephone number entered, the radio sounds a positive indicator tone then a negative indicator tone. The display remains the same.

6 Long press 🔄 to end the call.

The first line of the display shows Ending. The second line of the display shows Phone Call....

The display shows Phone Call Ended.

Waiting for the Channel Grant in an Outbound Private Phone Call

When you make a Private Phone Call, the first line of the display shows Phone Call. The second line of the display shows the dialed telephone number.

When the call is connected, the Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first line of the display shows the telephone number.

If unsuccessful, the display shows a negative mini notice, Phone Call Failed, Resource Not Available, or Invalid Permissions.

Long press 🔄 to end the call.

The display returns to the previous screen.

Making a Buffered Over-Dial in a Connected Outbound Private Phone Call

During the call, the Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line of the display shows the telephone number.

1 Use the keypad to enter the digits.

Press ◀ to delete any unwanted characters. Press ⊛ followed by ⌗ within 2 seconds to insert a pause. The P replaces * and # on the display.

The first text line of the display shows Extra Digits, the second text line of the display shows the entered extra digits.

2 Press the 🖩 OK button.

If the **PTT** button is pressed, the display shows a negative mini notice, `Press OK to Send` and returns to the previous screen.

The Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line of the display shows the telephone number with the over-dial digits appended.

3 Do one of the following.

- Press 🔄 to return to the Phone Call screen.

- Long press 🔄 to end the call.

Making a Live Over-Dial in a Connected Outbound Private Phone Call

During the call, the Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line of the display shows the telephone number.

1 Press the **PTT** button and use the keypad to enter the digits.
The Phone Call as Private Call icon appears in the top right corner. The first text line of the display shows the telephone number with the over-dial digits appended.
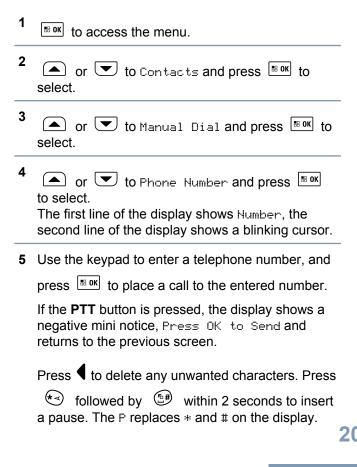
2 Long press 🔄 to end the call.

The first line of the display shows `Ending`. The second line of the display shows `Phone Call....`

The display shows `Phone Call Ended`.

Advanced Features in Connect Plus Mode

Auto Fallback

Auto Fallback is a system feature that allows you to continue to make and receive non-emergency calls on the selected Group Contact in the event of certain types of Connect Plus system failures.

If one of these failures occurs, your radio attempts to roam to a different Connect Plus site. This search process may result in your radio finding an operable Connect Plus site, or it may result in your radio finding a "Fallback Channel" (if your radio is enabled for Auto Fallback). A Fallback Channel is a repeater that is normally part of an operable Connect Plus site, but is currently unable to communicate with either its site controller or the Connect Plus network. In Fallback mode, the repeater operates as a single digital repeater. Auto Fallback Mode supports non-emergency Group Calls only. No other call types are supported in Fallback Mode.

Indications of Auto Fallback Mode

When your radio is using a Fallback channel, you hear the intermittent "Fallback Tone" approximately once every 15 seconds (except while transmitting). The display periodically shows a brief message, "Fallback Channel". Your radio only permits PTT on the selected Group Contact (Group Call, Multigroup Call, or Site All Call). It does not allow you to make other types of calls.

Making/Receiving Calls in Fallback Mode

> **Note:**
> Calls are heard only by radios that are monitoring the same Fallback channel and selected to the same Group. Calls are not networked to other sites or other repeaters.

Emergency voice calls or Emergency Alerts are not available in Fallback mode. If you press the emergency button in Fallback mode, the radio provides an invalid key press tone. Display-equipped radios also show the message, "Feature not available".

Private (radio to radio) and Phone calls are not available in Fallback mode. If you attempt a

call to a private contact, you will receive a denial tone. At this point you should select a desired group contact. Other non-supported calls include Remote Monitor, Call Alert, Radio Check, Radio Enable, Radio Disable, Text messaging, Location Updates, and packet data calls.

Enhanced Traffic Channel Access (ETCA) is not supported in Auto Fallback mode. If two or more radio users press **PTT** at the same time (or at almost the same time), it is possible that both radios transmit until **PTT** is released. In this event, it is possible that none of the transmissions will be understood by receiving radios.

Making calls in Fallback mode is similar to normal functioning. Simply select the group contact you wish to use (using the radio's normal channel selection method), and then press the **PTT** to start your call. It is possible that the channel may be in use already by another group. If the channel is in use, you receive a busy tone and the display will say "Channel Busy". You may select Group, Multi-group or Site All Call contacts using your radio's normal channel selection method. While the radio is operating on the Fallback Channel, the Multigroup operates just like other

Groups. It is only heard by radios that are currently selected to the same Multi-group.

Returning to Normal Operation

If the site returns to normal trunking operation while you are in range of your Fallback repeater, your radio automatically exits Auto Fallback mode. You hear a registration "beep" when the radio successfully registers. If you are in the range of an operable site (that is not in Fallback mode), you may press the Roam Request button (if programmed for your radio) to force your radio to search for and register on an available site. If no other site is available, your radio returns to Auto Fallback mode after searching is complete. If you drive out of coverage of your Fallback repeater, your radio enters Search mode (display indicates "Searching").

Radio Check

If enabled, this feature allows you to determine if another radio is active in a system without disturbing the user of that radio. No audible or visual notification is shown on the target radio.

This feature is only applicable for subscriber aliases or IDs.

205

Sending a Radio Check

1 Access the Radio Check feature.

Radio Control	Steps
Programmed Radio Check button	1 Press the programmed **Radio Check** button. 2 ▲ or ▼ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔡 OK to select.
Menu	1 🔡 OK to access the menu. 2 ▲ or ▼ to Contacts and press 🔡 OK to select. 3 ▲ or ▼ to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🔡 OK to select. 4 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Check and press 🔡 OK to select.

The display shows the Target Alias, indicating the request is in progress. The LED lights up solid green.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If the target radio is active in the system, a tone sounds and the display briefly shows Target Radio Available.

If the target radio is not active in the system, a tone sounds and the display briefly shows Target Radio Not Available.

Radio returns to the subscriber alias or ID screen when initiated via Menu.

Radio returns to the Home Screen if initiated via the programmable button.

Remote Monitor

Use the Remote Monitor feature to turn on the microphone of a target radio (subscriber alias or IDs only). The green LED will blink once on the target subscriber. You can use this feature to monitor, remotely, any audible activity surrounding the target radio.

206

Your radio must be programmed to allow you to use this feature.

Initiating Remote Monitor

> 📝 **Note:**
> Remote Monitor automatically stops after a programmed duration or when there is any attempt to initiate transmission, change channels or power down the radio.

1 Access the Remote Monitor feature.

Radio Control	Steps
Programmed Remote Monitor Button	**1** Press the programmed **Remote Monitor** button. **2** 🔼 or 🔽 to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🆗 to select.
Menu	**1** 🆗 to access the menu. **2** 🔼 or 🔽 to `Contacts` and press 🆗 to select.

Radio Control	Steps
	3 🔼 or 🔽 to the required subscriber alias or ID and press 🆗 to select. **4** 🔼 or 🔽 to `Manual Dial` and press 🆗 to select. **5** 🔼 or 🔽 to `Remote Mon.` and press 🆗 to select.

The first text line shows `Rem. Monitor`. The second text line displays the Target Alias, indicating the request is in progress. The LED lights up blinking green.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display momentarily shows `Rem. Monitor Successful`. Your radio starts playing audio from the monitored radio for a programmed duration and display shows `Rem. Monitor`, followed by

207

target alias. Once the timer expires, the radio sounds an alert tone and the LED turns off.

If unsuccessful, the radio sounds a negative indicator tone the display shows Rem. Monitor Failed.

Scan

This feature allows your radio to monitor and join calls for groups defined in a pre-programmed scan list. When scan is enabled, the scan icon appears on the status bar and the LED blinks yellow when idle.

Starting and Stopping Scan

Note:
This procedure turns the Scan feature On or Off for all Connect Plus zones with the same Network ID as your currently selected zone. It is important to note that even when the Scan feature is turned on via this procedure, scan may still be disabled for some (or all) groups on your scan list. See *Editing the Scan List* on page 210 for more information.

You can start and stop scanning by pressing the programmed **Scan** button **OR** follow the procedure described next.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 🔼 or 🔽 to Scan and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 🔼 or 🔽 to Turn On or Turn Off and press 🔲 OK to select.

- The display shows Scan On if scan is enabled.
- The Scan menu shows Turn Off if scan is enabled.
- The display shows Scan Off if scan is disabled.
- The Scan menu shows Turn On if scan is disabled.

Responding to a Transmission During a Scan

During scanning, your radio stops on a group where activity is detected. The radio continuously listens for any member in the scan list when idle on the control channel.

1. Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

2. Press the **PTT** button during hang time.
   The LED lights up solid green.

3. Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

4. Release the **PTT** button to listen.

   If you do not respond within the hang time, the radio returns to scanning other groups.

User Configurable Scan

If the Edit List menu is enabled, a user is able to Add and Remove the scan members from the Add Member menu. A Scan List member must be a regular Group Contact (i.e. not Multi-group or Site All Call/Network Wide All Call) that is currently assigned to a Channel Selector position in a Connect Plus Zone with the same Network ID as the currently selected Zone. The Talkgroup alias must not match any Talkgroup that has been included in the current Zone's Scan List.

Scan can be turned on or off from the menu or by pressing a programmed **Scan On/Off** button.

This feature functions only when the radio is not currently involved in a call. If you are presently listening to a call, your radio cannot scan for other group calls, and is therefore unaware they are in progress. Once your call is finished, your radio returns to the control channel time slot and is able to scan for groups that are in the scan list.

Turning Scan On or Off

Note:
This procedure turns the Scan feature On or Off for all zones with the same Network ID as your currently selected zone. It is important to note that even when the Scan feature is turned on via this procedure, scan may still be disabled for some (or all) groups on your scan list. See the next section for more information.

If Scan is turned on, the Scan icon appears on your display. When Scan is on and you are not participating in a call, the LED blinks green and yellow.

The procedure for turning Scan on or off depends on how your radio is programmed. If programmed with a Scan On/Off button, use the button to toggle the feature on or off. If your radio has been programmed so that Scan can be turned on or off via the menu, follow the procedure described next.

1
🔳OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Scan and press 🔳OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to Turn On or Turn Off and press 🔳OK to select.

- The display shows Scan On momentarily if scan is disabled.
- The display shows Scan Off momentarily if scan is enabled.

Editing the Scan List

> **Note:**
> If the scan list entry happens to be the radio's currently selected group, the radio listens for activity on this group regardless of whether the

list entry currently shows a check mark or not. Whenever a radio is not in a call, the radio listens for activity on its Selected Group, Multigroup, the Site All Call, and its Default Emergency Revert Group (if configured for one). This operation cannot be disabled. If Scan is enabled the radio will also listen for activity on enabled Zone Scan List members.

Your scan list determines which groups can be scanned. The list is created when your radio is programmed. If your radio has been programmed to allow you to edit the scan list, you can,

- Enable/disable scan for individual groups on the list.
- Add and Remove the scan members from the Add Member menu. Refer to *Add or Delete a Group via the Add Members Menu* on page 211.

> **Note:**
> A Scan List member must be a regular Group Contact (i.e. not Multigroup or Site All Call/ Network Wide All Call) that is currently assigned to a Channel Selector position in a Connect Plus Zone with the same Network ID as the currently selected Zone.

The Talkgroup alias must not match any Talkgroup that has been included in the current Zone's Scan List.

1   🖩 OK   to access the menu.

2   ⏶ or ⏷ to `View/Edit List` and press 🖩 OK to select.

3   ⏶ or ⏷ to the desired Group name.

If a check mark precedes the Group name, then scan is currently enabled for this Group.

If there is no check mark preceding the Group name, then scan is currently disabled for this Group.

4   🖩 OK   to select the desired Group.

The display shows `Enable` if scan is currently disabled for the Group.

The display shows `Disable` if scan is currently enabled for the Group.

5   Select the displayed option (`Enable` or `Disable`)

and press 🖩 OK to select.
Depending on which option was selected, the radio momentarily displays `Scan Enabled` or `Scan Disabled` as confirmation.

The radio displays the Zone scan list again. If scan was enabled for the Group, the check mark displays before the Group name. If scan was disabled for the Group, the check mark is removed before the Group name.

Add or Delete a Group via the Add Members Menu

The Connect Plus radio does not allow a duplicate group number or a duplicate group alias to be placed on a zone scan list (or to be shown as a "scan candidate"). Thus, the list of "scan candidates" described in steps *6* and *7* sometimes changes after adding or deleting a group from the zone scan list.

If your radio has been programmed to allow you to edit the scan list, you can use the Add Members menu to add a group to the scan list of the currently

211

selected zone, or to delete a group from the san list of the currently selected zone.

1 $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to access the menu.

2 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Scan option and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

3 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to <Add Members> and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.
The display shows "Add Members from Zone n" (n = the Connect Plus zone number of the first Connect Plus zone in your radio with the same Network ID as your currently selected zone).

4   Do one of the following.

- If the group you want to add to the scan list is assigned to a channel selector position in that zone, go to step *6*.
- If the group you want to add to the scan list is assigned to a channel selector position in a different Connect Plus zone, go to step *5*.

5 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to scroll a list of Connect Plus zones that have the same Network ID as the currently selected zone.

6   After locating the Connect Plus zone where the desired group is assigned to a channel selector

position, press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

Your radio displays the first entry in a list of groups assigned to a channel position in that zone. The groups on the list are called "scan candidates", because they can be added to the scan list of your currently selected zone (or they are already on the zone scan list).

If the zone does not have any groups that can be added to the scan list, the radio displays No Candidates.

7 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to scroll through the list of candidate groups.

If a plus sign (+) is displayed immediately before the group alias, this indicates the group is currently on the scan list for the selected zone.

212

If the plus sign (+) is not displayed immediately before the alias, the group is not currently on the scan list, but can be added.

8
Press 🔳 OK when the desired group alias is displayed.

If this group is not currently on the scan list for the currently selected zone, the Add (Group Alias) message is displayed.

If this group is already on the scan list for the currently selected zone, the Delete (Group Alias) message is displayed.

9
Press 🔳 OK to accept the displayed message (Add or Delete).

If deleting a group from the list, you will know the operation is successful because the plus sign (+) will no longer display immediately before the alias.

If adding a group to the list, you will know the operation is successful because the plus sign (+) will display before the alias.

If you are attempting to add a group, and the list is already full, the radio displays List Full. If this should occur, it will be necessary to delete a group from the scan list prior to adding a new one.

10
When finished, press 🔄 as many times as necessary to return to the desired menu.

Understanding Scan Operation

📝 **Note:**
If the Radio joins a call for a Zone Scan List member from a different Zone and Call Hang Timer expires before you are able to respond, in order to respond, you must navigate to the Zone and Channel of the Scan List Member and start a new call.

There are some circumstances in which you can miss calls for groups that are in your scan list. When you miss a call for one of the following reasons, this does not indicate a problem with your radio. This is a normal scan operation for Connect Plus.

- Scan feature is not turned on (check for the scan icon on the display).
- Scan list member has been disabled via the menu (see *Editing the Scan List* on page 210).
- You are participating in a call already.

213

- No member of the scanned group is registered at your site (Multisite systems only).

Scan Talkback

If your radio scans into a call from the selectable group scan list, and if the **PTT** button is pressed during the scanned call, the operation of the radio depends on whether Scan Talkback was enabled or disabled during radio programming. For more information on how your radio is programmed, contact your radio dealer (or your radio system administrator).

Scan Talkback Disabled	The radio leaves the scanned call and attempts to transmit on the contact for the currently selected channel position. After the Call Hang Time on the currently selected contact expires, the radio returns to the home channel and starts the Scan Hang Time Timer. The radio resumes group scan after its Scan Hang Time Timer expires.
Scan Talkback Enabled	If the **PTT** button is pressed during the Group Hang Time of the scanned call,

the radio attempts to transmit to the scanned group.

> **Note:**
> If you scan into a call for a group that is not assigned to a channel position in the currently selected zone and you miss the Hang Time of the call, switch to the proper zone and then select the channel position of the group to talk back to that group.

Contacts Settings

> **Note:**
> You can add, or edit subscriber IDs for Connect Plus Contacts. Deleting subscriber IDs can only be performed by your dealer.
>
> If the Privacy feature is enabled on a channel, you can make a privacy-enabled voice call on that channel. Only target radios with the same Privacy Key, or the same Key Value and Key ID as your radio are able to unscramble the transmission.

Contacts provide "address-book" capabilities on your radio. Each entry corresponds to an alias or ID that you use to initiate a call.

Each zone provides a Contact List with up to 100 contacts. The following contact types are available:

- Private Call
- Group Call
- Multigroup Call
- Site All Call Voice
- Site All Call Text
- Dispatch Call

The Dispatch Call contact type is used to send a text message to a dispatcher PC through a third-party Text Message Server.

Making a Private Call from Contacts

1 ⌧ to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Contacts and press ⌧ to select.

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

4 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.

The LED lights up solid green.

5 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

6 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green and the display shows the transmitting user's ID.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

You hear a short tone. The display shows Call Ended.

Making a Call Alias Search

You can also use alias or alphanumeric search to retrieve the required subscriber alias.

This feature is only applicable while in Contacts.

1 ⌧ to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Contacts and press ⌧ to select.

215

The entries are alphabetically sorted.

3 Key in the first character of the required alias, and then press ⬆ or ⬇ to locate the required alias.

4 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

5 Press the **PTT** button to make the call.
The LED lights up solid green. The display shows the destination alias.

6 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled), and speak clearly into the microphone.

7 Release the **PTT** button to listen.

When the target radio responds, the LED blinks green.

If there is no voice activity for a predetermined period of time, the call ends.

The display shows Call Ended.

Adding a New Contact

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Contacts and press 🔳OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to New Contact and press 🔳OK to select.

4 Use the keypad to enter the contact number and press 🔳OK to confirm.

5 Use the keypad to enter the contact name and press 🔳OK to confirm.

6 If adding a Radio Contact, ⬆ or ⬇ to the required ringer type and press 🔳OK to select.
The radio sounds a positive indicator tone and the display shows Contact Saved.

Call Indicator Settings

Activating and Deactivating Call Ringers for Call Alert

You can select, or turn on or off ringing tones for a received Call Alert.

1 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Tones/Alert and press OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to Call Ringers and press OK to select.

6 ▲ or ▼ to Call Alert and press OK to select.

The current tone is indicated by a ✓.

7 ▲ or ▼ to the required tone and press OK to select.

✓ appears beside selected tone.

Activating and Deactivating Call Ringers for Private Calls

You can turn on or off the ringing tones for a received Private Call.

1 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Tones/Alerts and press OK to select.

217

5 ▲ or ▼ to Call Ringers and press 🔲OK to select.

6 ▲ or ▼ to Private Call and press 🔲OK to select.

7 Press 🔲OK to enable/disable the Private Call ringing tones.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled, if Private Call ringing tones are enabled.

The ✔ is not displayed when Private Call ringing tones are disabled.

Activating and Deactivating Call Ringers for Text Message

You can turn on or off the ringing tones for a received Text Message.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Tones/Alerts and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to Call Ringers and press 🔲OK to select.

6 ▲ or ▼ to Text Message and press 🔲OK to select.

The current tone is indicated by a ✔.

7 ▲ or ▼ to the required tone and press 🔲OK to select.

✔ appears beside selected tone.

Escalating Alarm Tone Volume

You can program your radio to continually alert you when a radio call remains unanswered. This is done by automatically increasing the alarm tone volume over time. This feature is known as Escalert.

218

Call Log Features

Your radio keeps track of all recent outgoing, answered, and missed Private Calls. Use the call log feature to view and manage recent calls.

You can perform the following tasks in each of your call lists:

- Delete
- View Details

Viewing Recent Calls

The lists are Missed, Answered, and Outgoing.

1
🔳OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Call Log and press 🔳OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to preferred list and press 🔳OK to select.
The display shows the most recent entry at the top of the list.

4
🔼 or 🔽 to view the list.
Press the **PTT** button to start a Private Call with the current selected alias or ID.

Deleting a Call from a Call List

1
🔳OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Call Log and press 🔳OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to the required list and press 🔳OK to select.
When you select a call list and it contains no entries, the display shows List Empty, and sounds a low tone if Keypad Tones are turned on (see *Turning Keypad Tones On or Off* on page 141).

4
🔼 or 🔽 to the required alias or ID and press 🔳OK to select.

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to Delete and press ⌨OK to select.

6 Do one of the following:

- Press ⌨OK to select Yes to delete the entry. The display shows Entry Deleted.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to No, and press the ⌨OK button to return to the previous screen.

Viewing Details from a Call List

1 ⌨OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Call Log and press ⌨OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required list and press ⌨OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias or ID and press ⌨OK to select.

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to View Details and press ⌨OK to select.
Display shows details.

Call Alert Operation

Call Alert paging enables you to alert a specific radio user to call you back when they are able to do so.

This feature is accessible through the menu via Contacts, manual dial or a programmed **One Touch Access** button.

Receiving and Responding to a Call Alert

When you receive a Call Alert page, you see the notification list listing a Call Alert with the alias or ID of the calling radio on the display.

When you hear a repetitive tone and the LED blinks yellow, do one of the following:

- Press the **PTT** button while the display still shows the Call Alert in the Notification List to respond with a Private Call.

- Press ↺ to exit the Notification List. The alert is moved to the Missed Call Log.

See *Notification List* on page 248 for details about the Notification List.

See *Call Log Features* on page 219 for details about the Missed Call List.

Making a Call Alert from the Contact List

1 🔲 to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Contacts and press 🔲 to select.

3 Use one of the steps described next to select the required subscriber alias or ID:

- select the subscriber alias directly

  - ⬆ or ⬇ to the required subscriber alias and press 🔲 to select.

- use the Manual Dial menu

  - ⬆ or ⬇ to Manual Dial and press 🔲 to select.

- The Manual Dial text entry screen shall be displayed. Enter the Subscriber ID and press 🔲 .

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to Call Alert and press 🔲 to select.

The display shows Call Alert: <Subscriber Alias or ID>Call Alert and the subscriber alias or ID, indicating that the Call Alert has been sent.

The LED lights up solid green when your radio is sending the Call Alert.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is received, the display shows Call Alert Successful.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is not received, the display shows Call Alert Failed.

Making a Call Alert with the One Touch Access Button

Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button to make a Call Alert to the predefined alias. The display shows Call Alert and the subscriber alias or ID, indicating that the Call Alert has been sent.

221

The LED lights up solid green when your radio is sending the Call Alert.

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is received, the display shows `Call Alert Successful.`

If the Call Alert acknowledgement is not received, the display shows `Call Alert Failed.`

Emergency Operation

Note:

If your radio is programmed for Silent or Silent with Voice emergency initiation, in most cases it automatically exits silent operation after the Emergency Call or Emergency Alert is finished. The exception to this rule is when Emergency Alert is the configured Emergency Mode and Silent is the configured Emergency Type. If your radio is programmed in this manner, the silent operation continues until you cancel silent operation by pressing **PTT** or the button configured for Emergency Off.

Emergency voice calls and Emergency Alerts are not supported when operating in Connect Plus Auto Fallback mode. For more information see the *Auto Fallback* on page 204.

An Emergency Alert is used to indicate a critical situation. You can initiate an Emergency at any time on any screen display, even when there is activity on the current channel. Pressing the **Emergency** button initiates the programmed Emergency mode. The programmed Emergency mode may also be initiated by triggering the optional Man Down feature. The Emergency feature may be disabled in your radio.

Your dealer can set the duration of a button press for the programmed **Emergency** button, except for long press, which is similar with all other buttons:

Short press	Between 0.05 seconds and 0.75 seconds.
Long press	Between 1.00 second and 3.75 seconds.

The **Emergency** button is assigned with the Emergency On/Off feature. Check with your dealer for the assigned operation of the **Emergency** button.

• If the short press for the **Emergency** button is assigned to turn on the Emergency mode, then the

long press for the **Emergency** button is assigned to exit the Emergency mode.

- If the long press for the **Emergency** button is assigned to turn on the Emergency mode, then the short press for the **Emergency** button is assigned to exit the Emergency mode.

When your radio is selected to a Connect Plus zone, it supports three Emergency modes:

Emergency Call	You must press the **PTT** button to talk on the assigned emergency time slot.
Emergency Call with Voice to Follow	For the first transmission on the assigned emergency time slot, the microphone is automatically unmuted and you may talk without pressing the **PTT** button. The microphone stays "hot" in this fashion for a time period programmed into the radio. For subsequent transmissions in the same Emergency call, you must press the **PTT** button.
Emergency Alert	An Emergency Alert is not a voice call. It is an emergency notification that is sent to radios that are configured to receive these alerts. The radio sends an emergency alert via the control channel of the currently registered site. The Emergency Alert is received by radios in the Connect Plus network that are programmed to receive them (no matter which network site they are registered to).

Only one of the Emergency Modes can be assigned to the Emergency button per zone. In addition, each Emergency mode has the following types:

Regular	Radio initiates an Emergency and shows audio and/or visual indicators.
Silent	Radio initiates an Emergency without any audio or visual indicators. The radio suppresses all audio or visual indications of the Emergency until you press the **PTT** button to start a voice transmission.
Silent with Voice	The same as Silent operation, except that the radio also unmutes for some voice transmissions.

223

Receiving an Incoming Emergency

Your radio may be programmed to sound an alert tone and also display information about the incoming Emergency. If so programmed, upon receiving the incoming Emergency, the display shows the Emergency Details screen with the emergency icon, the Alias or ID of the radio that requested the Emergency, the Group Contact being used for the Emergency, and one additional line of information. The additional information is the name of the zone that contains the Group Contact.

At the present time, the radio displays only the most recently decoded Emergency. If a new Emergency is received before the prior Emergency is cleared, the details for the new Emergency replace the details of the previous Emergency.

Depending on how your radio has been programmed, the Emergency Details screen (or Alarm List screen) will stay on your radio's display even after the Emergency ends. You can save the emergency details to the Alarm List, or you can delete the emergency details as described in the following sections.

Saving the Emergency Details to the Alarm List

Saving the emergency details to the Alarm List allows you to view the details again at a later time by selecting Alarm List from the Main Menu.

1 While the Emergency Details (or Alarm List)

screen is displayed, press $\boxed{\text{⊃↖}}$.
The **Exit Alarm List** screen displays.

2 Perform one of the following actions:

   •
   Select **Yes** and press $\boxed{\text{☰ OK}}$ to save the emergency details to the Alarm List, and to exit the Emergency Details (or Alarm List) screen.

   •
   Select **No** and press $\boxed{\text{☰ OK}}$ to return to the Emergency Details (or Alarm List) screen.

Deleting the Emergency Details

1 While the Emergency Details screen is displayed,

press $\boxed{\text{⊃↖}}$.
The **Delete** screen displays.

2 Perform one of the following actions:

224

- Select **Yes** and press `OK` to delete the emergency details.

- Select **No** and press `OK` to return to the Emergency Details screen.

Responding to an Emergency Call

> **Note:**
> If you do not respond to the Emergency Call within the time allotted for the Emergency Call Hang Time, the Emergency call will end. If you want to speak to the group after the Emergency Call Hang Time expires, you must first select the channel position assigned to the group (if not already selected). Then, press **PTT** to start a non-Emergency Call to the group.

1 When receiving an Emergency Call, press any button to stop all Emergency Call received indications.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to initiate a voice transmission on the Emergency group.
All radios that are monitoring this group hear your transmission.

4 Wait for the Talk Permit Tone to finish (if enabled) and speak clearly into the microphone.
The LED lights up green.

5 Release the **PTT** button to listen.
When the emergency initiating radio responds, the LED blinks green. You see the Group Call icon, the group ID, and transmitting radio ID on your display.

Responding to an Emergency Alert

> **Note:**
> The Group contact used for the Emergency Alert should not be used for voice communication. This could prevent other radios from sending and receiving Emergency Alerts on the same group.

An Emergency Alert from a radio indicates that the user is in an urgent situation. You may respond to the alert by initiating a private call to the radio who declared the emergency, initiating a group call to a

225

designated talk group, sending the radio a Call Alert, initiating a Remote Monitor of that radio, etc. The proper response is determined by your organization and the individual situation.

Initiating an Emergency Call

Note:

If your radio is set to Silent, it does not display any audio or visual indicators during Emergency mode until you press the **PTT** button to initiate a voice transmission.

If your radio is set to Silent with Voice, it does not initially display any audio or visual indicators that the radio is in Emergency mode. However, your radio unmutes for the transmissions of radios responding to your emergency. The emergency indicators only appear once you press the **PTT** button to initiate a voice transmission from your radio.

For both "Silent" and "Silent with Voice" operation, the radio automatically exits silent operation after the Emergency Call is finished.

1 Press the programmed **Emergency** button.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 Press the **PTT** button to initiate a voice transmission on the Emergency group.

When you release the **PTT** button, the Emergency call continues for the time allotted for the Emergency Call Hang Time.

If you press the **PTT** button during this time, the Emergency call continues.

Initiating an Emergency Call with Voice to Follow

Your radio must be programmed for this type of operation.

When enabled for this operation, when you press the programmed **Emergency** button, and when your radio receives the time slot assignment, the microphone is automatically activated without pressing the **PTT** button. This activated microphone state is also known as "hot mic". The "hot mic" applies to the first voice transmission from your radio during the Emergency call. For subsequent transmissions in the same Emergency call, you must press the **PTT** button.

1 Press the programmed **Emergency** button.

2 Hold the microphone 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5.0 cm) from your mouth.

3 The microphone remains active for the "hot mic" time specified in your radio's codeplug programming.
   During this time, the LED lights up green.

4 Press and hold the **PTT** button to talk longer than the programmed duration.

Initiating an Emergency Alert

Note:
If your radio is programmed for "Silent" or "Silent with Voice", it will not provide any audio or visual indications that it is sending an Emergency Alert. If programmed for "Silent", the silent operation continues indefinitely until you press PTT or the button configured for "Emergency Off". If programmed for "Silent with Voice", the radio automatically cancels silent operation when the site controller broadcasts the Emergency Alert.

Press the orange **Emergency** button.

Upon transmitting the Emergency Alert to the site controller, the radio's display shows the Emergency icon, the Group contact used for the Emergency Alert, and TX Alarm.

Once the Emergency Alert is successfully sent and is being broadcast for other radios to hear, a positive indicator tone sounds and the radio's display shows Alarm Sent. If the Emergency Alert is unsuccessful, a negative indicator tone sounds and the radio displays Alarm Failed.

Exiting Emergency Mode

Note:
If the Emergency call ends due to the expiration of the Emergency Hang Time, but the emergency condition is not over, press the **Emergency** button again to restart the process.

If you initiate an Emergency Alert by pressing the programmed **Emergency** button, your radio automatically exits Emergency mode after receiving a response from the Connect Plus system.

If you initiate an Emergency call by pressing the programmed **Emergency** button, your radio will be

227

assigned a channel automatically when one becomes available. Once your radio has transmitted a message indicating the emergency, you cannot cancel your Emergency call. However, if you pressed the button by accident or the emergency no longer exists, you may wish to say this over the assigned channel. When you release the **PTT** button, the Emergency call is discontinued after the Emergency Call Hang Time expires.

If your radio was configured for Emergency with Voice to Follow, use the "hot mic" period to explain your error, then press and release the **PTT** button to discontinue the transmission. The Emergency call is discontinued after the Emergency Call Hang Time expires.

Text Message Features

Your radio is able to receive data, for example a text message, from another radio or a text message application.

The **maximum** length of characters for sending a text message, including the subject line (seen when receiving message from an e-mail application), depends on CPS configuration which can be configured up to maximum 280 characters. Your radio can receive a text message with **maximum** length of 280 characters.

If user forwards a text message with characters more than the **maximum** length, the text message will be truncated to the **maximum** length.

The radio exits the current screen once the inactivity timer expires.

> **Note:**
>
> Long press 🔄 at any time to return to the Home screen.

Sending a Quick Text Message

Your radio supports a maximum of 10 Quick Text messages as programmed by your dealer.

While Quick Text messages are predefined, you can edit each message before sending it.

If you are sending the message, select the recipient by

- ▲ or ▼ to the required alias and press ▦ OK to select.

- ▲ or ▼ to Manual Dial, and press
  ▥ OK to select. The first line of the display
  shows Number:. The second line of the display
  shows a blinking cursor. Key in the subscriber

  alias or ID and press ▥ OK .

The display shows Sending Message, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows Message Sent.

If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows Message Send Failed.

If the text message fails to send, the radio returns you to the Resend option screen (see *Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages* on page 231).

Sending a Quick Text Message with the One Touch Access Button

Press the programmed **One Touch Access** button to send a predefined Quick Text message to a predefined alias.
The display shows Sending Message, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent, a tone sounds and the display shows Message Sent.

If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows Message Send Failed.

If the text message fails to send, the radio returns you to the Resend option screen (see *Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages* on page 231).

Accessing the Drafts Folder

The Drafts folder stores a maximum of ten (10) last saved messages. When the folder is full, the next saved text message automatically replaces the oldest text message in the folder.

✎ **Note:**
You can edit saved text message before sending it. Only available with a keypad microphone (see *Editing and Sending a Saved*

Text Message on page 165. Long press ⟲⌂ at any time to return to the Home screen.

Viewing a Saved Text Message

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

229

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🔲 OK to access the menu. **2** 🔺 or 🔻 to Messages and press 🔲 OK to select.

2 🔺 or 🔻 to Drafts and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 🔺 or 🔻 to the required message and press 🔲 OK to select.

Editing and Sending a Saved Text Message

1 Press 🔲 OK again while viewing the message.

2 🔺 or 🔻 to Edit and press 🔲 OK to select.

230

A blinking cursor appears.

3 Use the keypad to type your message.

Press ◀ to move one space to the left. Press ▶ or the 🔲 key to move one space to the right. Press the ⊛ key to delete any unwanted characters. Long press 🔲 to change text entry method.

4 Press 🔲 OK once message is composed.

5 Select the message recipient by

- 🔺 or 🔻 to the required alias and press 🔲 OK to select.

- 🔺 or 🔻 to Manual Dial, and press 🔲 OK to select. The first line of the display shows Number:. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Key in the subscriber alias or ID and press 🔲 OK .

The display shows Sending Message, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows Message Sent.

If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows Message Send Failed.

If the text message cannot be sent, it is moved to the Sent Items folder and marked with a Send Failed icon.

Deleting a Saved Text Message from Drafts

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🔠OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to Messages and press 🔠OK to select.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Drafts and press 🔠OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to the required message and press 🔠OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Delete and press 🔠OK to delete the text message.

Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages

You can select one of the following options while at the Resend option screen:

- Resend
- Forward
- Edit

Resending a Text Message

Press 🔠OK to resend the same message to the same subscriber/group alias or ID.

If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows the positive mini notice.

231

If the message cannot be sent, the display shows the negative mini notice.

Forwarding a Text Message

Select Forward to send the message to another subscriber/group alias or ID.

1 ⬆ or ⬇ to Forward and press 🖩 OK to select.

2 Select the message recipient by ⬆ or ⬇ to

the required alias or ID and press 🖩 OK to select.

The display shows Sending Message, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows Message Sent.

If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows Message Send Failed.

Managing Sent Text Messages

Once a message is sent to another radio, it is saved in Sent Items. The most recent sent text message is always added to the top of the Sent Items list.

The Sent Items folder is capable of storing a maximum of thirty (30) last sent messages. When the folder is full, the next sent text message automatically replaces the oldest text message in the folder.

📝 **Note:**

Long press 🔙 at any time to return to the Home screen.

Viewing a Sent Text Message

1 Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🖩 OK to access the menu. **2** ⬆ or ⬇ to Messages and press 🖩 OK to select.

2 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to Sent Items and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

3 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to the required message and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

The icon at the top right corner of the screen indicates the status of the message (see *Sent Item Icons* on page 186).

Sending a Sent Text Message

You can select one of the following options while viewing a sent text message:

- Resend
- Forward
- Edit
- Delete

1 Press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ again while viewing the message.

2 $\triangle$ or $\triangledown$ to one of the following options and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

Option	Steps
Forward	Select Forward to send the selected text message to another subscriber/group alias or ID (see *Forwarding a Text Message* on page 232).
Delete	Select Delete to delete the text message.
Resend	Select Resend to resend the selected text message to the same subscriber/group alias or ID. The display shows Sending Message, confirming that the same message is being sent to the same target radio. If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows Message Sent. If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows Message Send Failed.

233

Option	Steps
	If the message fails to send, the radio returns you to the `Resend` option screen. Press ⌗OK to resend the message to the same subscriber/group alias or ID. **Note:** If you exit the message sending screen while the message is being sent, the radio updates the status of the message in the Sent Items folder without providing any indication in the display or via sound. **Note:** If the radio changes mode or powers down before the status of the message in Sent Items is updated, the radio cannot complete any In-Progress messages and automatically marks it with a Send Failed icon.

Option	Steps
	Note: The radio supports a maximum of five (5) In-Progress messages at one time. During this period, the radio cannot send any new message and automatically marks it with a Send Failed icon.

If you exit the message sending screen while the message is being sent, the radio updates the status of the message in the Sent Items folder without providing any indication in the display or via sound.

If the radio changes mode or powers down before the status of the message in Sent Items is updated, the radio cannot complete any In-Progress messages and automatically marks it with a Send Failed icon.

The radio supports a maximum of five (5) In-Progress messages at one time. During this

period, the radio cannot send any new message and automatically marks it with a Send Failed icon.

Deleting All Sent Text Messages from Sent Items

1 Access the **Text Message** feature by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	1 ⊞OK to access the menu.
	2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Messages and press ⊞OK to select.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Sent Items and press ⊞OK to select.

When you select Sent Items and it contains no text messages, the display shows List Empty, and sounds a low tone if Keypad Tones are turned on (see *Turning Keypad Tones On or Off* on page 141).

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to Delete All and press ⊞OK to select.

4 Choose one of the following.

• ⏶ or ⏷ to Yes and press ⊞OK to select. The display shows positive mini notice.

• ⏶ or ⏷ to No and press ⊞OK to return to the previous screen.

Receiving a Text Message

When your radio receives a message, the display shows the Notification List with the alias or ID of the sender and the Message icon.

You can select one of the following options when receiving a text message:

• Read
• Read Later
• Delete

235

Reading a Text Message

1 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Read?` and press 🔳 OK to select.

Selected message in the Inbox opens.

2 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔳 OK to return to the Inbox.

- Press 🔳 OK a second time to reply, forward, or delete the text message.

Managing Received Text Messages

Use the Inbox to manage your text messages. The Inbox is capable of storing a maximum of 30 messages.

Text messages in the Inbox are sorted according to the most recently received.

Your radio supports the following options for text messages:

- Reply (via Quick Text)
- Forward
- Delete
- Delete All

236

Note:
If the channel type is not a match, you can only forward, delete, or delete all Received messages.

Long press 🔙 at any time to return to the Home screen.

Viewing a Text Message from the Inbox

1 🔳 OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Messages` and press 🔳 OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Inbox` and press 🔳 OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ toview the messages.

5 Do one of the following:

- Press 🔳 OK to select the current message, and press 🔳 OK again to reply, forward, or delete that message.

- Long press 🔙 to return to the Home screen.

Replying to a Text Message from the Inbox

1   Access the **Text Message** feature.

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🔲OK to access the menu. **2** 🔼 or 🔽 to Messages and press 🔲OK to select.

2   🔼 or 🔽 to Inbox and press 🔲OK to select.

3   🔼 or 🔽 to the required message and press 🔲OK to select.

4   Press 🔲OK once more to access the sub-menu.

5   Use your keypad to write/edit your message.

6   Press 🔲OK once message is composed.

The display shows Sending Message, confirming your message is being sent.

If the message is sent successfully, a tone sounds and the display shows Message Sent.

If the message cannot be sent, a low tone sounds and the display shows Message Send Failed.

If the message cannot be sent, the radio returns you to the Resend option screen (see *Managing Fail-to-Send Text Messages* on page 231).

Deleting a Text Message from the Inbox

1   Access the **Text Message** feature by performing one of the following actions:

237

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🖩OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to Messages and press 🖩OK to select.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Inbox and press 🖩OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to the required message and press 🖩OK to select.

4 Press 🖩OK once more to access the sub-menu.

5 ▲ or ▼ to Delete and press 🖩OK to select.

6 ▲ or ▼ to Yes and press 🖩OK to select.

The display shows Message Deleted, and the screen returns to the Inbox.

Deleting All Text Messages from the Inbox

1 Access the **Text Message** feature by performing one of the following actions:

Radio Controls	Steps
Programmed Text Message button	Press the programmed **Text Message** button.
Menu	**1** 🖩OK to access the menu. **2** ▲ or ▼ to Messages and press 🖩OK to select.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Inbox and press 🖩OK to select.

When you select Inbox and it contains no text messages, the display shows List Empty, and sounds a low tone if Keypad Tones are turned on

238

(see *Turning Keypad Tones On or Off* on page 141).

3   ⏶ or ⏷ to `Delete All` and press 🔡OK to select.

4   ⏶ or ⏷ to `Yes` and press 🔡OK to select. The display shows `Inbox Cleared`.

Privacy

If enabled, this feature helps to prevent eavesdropping by unauthorized users on a channel by the use of a software-based scrambling solution. The signaling and user identification portions of a transmission are not scrambled.

Your radio must have privacy enabled on the current channel selector position to send a privacy-enabled transmission, although this is not a necessary requirement for receiving a transmission. While on a privacy-enabled channel selector position, the radio is still able to receive clear (unscrambled) transmissions.

Your radio supports Enhanced Privacy.

To unscramble a privacy-enabled call transmission, your radio must be programmed to have the same Key Value and Key ID (for Enhanced Privacy) as the transmitting radio.

If your radio receives a scrambled call that is of a different Key Value and Key ID, you hear nothing at all (Enhanced Privacy).

If the radio has a privacy type assigned, the Home screen shows the Secure or Unsecure icon, except when the radio is sending or receiving an Emergency call or alarm.

The LED lights up solid green while the radio is transmitting and blinks green rapidly when the radio is receiving an ongoing privacy-enabled transmission.

You can access this feature by performing one of the following actions:

• Press the programmed **Privacy** button to toggle privacy on or off.
• Using the Radio Menu as described by the steps described next.

239

Note:
Some radio models may not offer this Privacy feature. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

1
🔲 OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings or 🔼 or 🔽 to Connect Plus and press 🔲 OK to select.

4
🔼 or 🔽 to Enhanced Privacy.

If the display shows Turn On, press 🔲 OK to enable Privacy. The radio displays a message confirming your selection.

If the display shows Turn Off, press 🔲 OK to disable Privacy. The radio displays a message confirming your selection.

If the radio has a privacy type assigned, the secure or unsecure icon appears on the status bar, except when the radio is sending or receiving an Emergency Alert.

Making a Privacy-Enabled (Scrambled) Call

Toggle privacy on using the programmed privacy button or by using the menu. Your radio must have the Privacy feature enabled for the currently selected channel position to send a privacy-enabled transmission. When privacy is enabled for the currently selected channel position, all voice transmissions made by your radio will be scrambled. This includes Group Call, Multigroup Call, talk-back during scanned calls, Site All Call, Emergency Call, and Private Call. Only receiving radios with the same Key Value and Key ID as your radio will be able to unscramble the transmission.

Security

You can enable or disable any radio in the system. For example, you might want to disable a stolen radio, to prevent the thief from using it, and enable that radio, when it is recovered.

Note:
Performing Radio Disable and Enable is limited to radios with these functions enabled. Check with your dealer or system administrator for more information.

Radio Disable

1 Access this feature by

Radio Controls	Steps
Radio Disable button	1 Press the programmed **Radio Disable** button. 2 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required alias or ID and press 🔲 OK to select.
Radio menu	1 🔲 OK to access the menu. 2 ⏶ or ⏷ to Contacts and press 🔲 OK to select. The entries are alphabetically sorted.

Radio Controls	Steps

	3 Use one of the steps described next to select the required subscriber alias or ID:
	
	 • Select the required alias or ID directly.
	
	    • ⏶ or ⏷ to the required alias or ID and press 🔲 OK to select.
	
	 • Use the Manual Dial menu
	
	    • ⏶ or ⏷ to Manual Dial and press 🔲 OK to select.
	
	    • ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Number and press 🔲 OK to select.

241

Radio Controls	Steps
	• The first line of the display shows `Radio Number:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to enter the subscriber alias or ID and press `⌸ OK`. **4** `▲` or `▼` to `Radio Disable` and press `⌸ OK` to select.

The display shows `Radio Disable: <Target Alias or ID>` and the LED blinks green.

2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display shows `Radio Disable Successful`.

If not successful, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows `Radio Disable Failed`.

Radio Enable

1 Access this feature by

Radio Controls	Steps
Radio Enable button	**1** Press the programmed **Radio Enable** button. **2** `▲` or `▼` to the required alias or ID and press `⌸ OK` to select.
Radio menu	**1** `⌸ OK` to access the menu. **2** `▲` or `▼` to `Contacts` and press `⌸ OK` to select. The entries are alphabetically sorted. **3** Use one of the steps described next to select the required subscriber alias or ID • Select the required alias or ID directly.

Radio Controls	Steps

	• ⬆ or ⬇ to the required alias or ID and press 🔲 OK to select.
	• Use the `Manual Dial` menu
	  • ⬆ or ⬇ to `Manual Dial` and press 🔲 OK to select.
	  • ⬆ or ⬇ to `Radio Number` and press 🔲 OK to select.
	• The first line of the display shows `Radio Number:`. The second line of the display shows a blinking cursor. Use the keypad to enter the subscriber alias or ID and press 🔲 OK .

Radio Controls	Steps
4	⬆ or ⬇ to `Radio Enable` and press 🔲 OK to select.

The display shows `Radio Enable: <Subscriber Alias or ID>` and the LED lights up solid green.
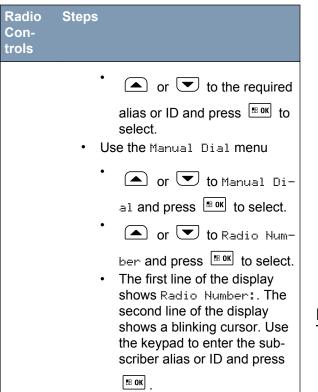
2 Wait for acknowledgement.

If successful, a positive indicator tone sounds and the display shows `Radio Enable Successful.`

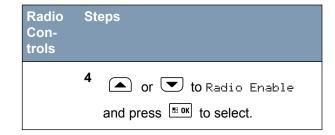If not successful, a negative indicator tone sounds and the display shows `Radio Enable Failed.`

Bluetooth Operation

📝 **Note:**
If disabled via the CPS, all Bluetooth-related features are disabled and the Bluetooth device database is erased.

243

This feature allows you to use your radio with a Bluetooth-enabled device (accessory) via a wireless Bluetooth connection. Your radio supports both Motorola and COTS (Commercially available Off-The-Shelf) Bluetooth-enabled devices.

Bluetooth operates within a range of 10 meters (32 feet) line of sight. This is an unobstructed path between your radio and your Bluetooth-enabled device.

It is not recommended that you leave your radio behind and expect your Bluetooth-enabled device to work with a high degree of reliability when they are separated.

At the fringe areas of reception, both voice and tone quality will start to sound "garbled" or "broken". To correct this problem, simply position your radio and Bluetooth-enabled device closer to each other (within the 10-meter/32 feet defined range) to re-establish clear audio reception. Your radio's Bluetooth function has a maximum power of 2.5 mW (4 dBm) at the 10-meter/32 feet range.

Your radio can support up to 4 simultaneous Bluetooth connections with Bluetooth-enabled devices of unique types. For example, a headset, and a PTT-Only Device (POD). Multiple connections with

Bluetooth-enabled devices of the same type are not supported.

Refer to your respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual for more details on your Bluetooth-enabled device's full capabilities.

Turning Bluetooth On and Off

1 $\boxed{\text{BB OK}}$ to access the menu.

2 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to Bluetooth and press $\boxed{\text{BB OK}}$ to select.

3 $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to My Status and press $\boxed{\text{BB OK}}$ to select.
The display shows On and Off. The current status is indicated by a ✓.

4 Do one of the following:

• $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ or $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ to On and press $\boxed{\text{BB OK}}$ to select. The display shows On and a ✓ appears left of the selected status.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to Off and press 🔲 OK to select. The display shows Off and a ✔ appears left of the selected status.

Finding and Connecting to a Bluetooth Device

Do not turn off your Bluetooth-enabled device or press ⟲ during the finding and connecting operation as this cancels the operation.

1 Turn on your Bluetooth-enabled device and place it in pairing mode. Refer to respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual.

2 On your radio, press 🔲 OK to access the menu.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Bluetooth and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to Devices and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 Do one of the following:

- ⬆ or ⬇ to the required device and press 🔲 OK to select.

- ⬆ or ⬇ to Find Devices to locate available devices. ⬆ or ⬇ to the required device and press 🔲 OK to select.

6 ⬆ or ⬇ to Connect and press 🔲 OK to select.
Display shows Connecting to <Device>. Your Bluetooth-enabled device may require additional steps to complete the pairing. Refer to respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual.

If successful, the radio display shows <Device>Connected. A tone sounds and ✔ appears besides the connected device. The Bluetooth Connected icon appears on the status bar.

If unsuccessful, the radio display shows Connecting Failed.

245

Note:
If pin code is required, use the same entry method as Step *2* in *Accessing the Radio from Password* on page 170.

Finding and Connecting from a Bluetooth Device (Discoverable Mode)

Do not turn off your Bluetooth or your radio during the finding and connecting operation as this may cancel the operation.

1 Turn Bluetooth On.

See *Turning Bluetooth On and Off* on page 107.

2 🔳 to access the menu.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Bluetooth and press 🔳 to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Find Me and press 🔳 to select.

Your radio can now be found by other Bluetooth-enabled devices for a programmed duration. This is called Discoverable Mode.

5 Turn on your Bluetooth-enabled device and pair it with your radio.

Refer to respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual.

Disconnecting from a Bluetooth Device

1 On your radio, press 🔳 to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Bluetooth and press 🔳 to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Devices and press 🔳 to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to the required device and press 🔳 to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to Disconnect and press 🔳 to select.

Display shows Disconnecting from <Device>. Your Bluetooth-enabled device may require

additional steps to disconnect. Refer to respective Bluetooth-enabled device's user manual.

The radio display shows `<Device> Disconnected`. A positive indicator tone sounds and ✔ disappears beside the connected device. The Bluetooth Connected icon disappears on the status bar.

Switching Audio Route between Internal Radio Speaker and Bluetooth Device

You can toggle audio routing between internal radio speaker and external Bluetooth-enabled accessory.

Press the programmed **Bluetooth Audio Switch** button.

- A tone sounds and display shows `Route Audio to Radio`.
- A tone sounds and display shows `Route Audio to Bluetooth`.

Viewing Device Details

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Bluetooth` and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to `Devices` and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to the required device and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to `View Details` and press 🔲 OK to select.

Deleting Device Name

You can remove a disconnected device from the list of Bluetooth-enabled devices.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to `Bluetooth` and press 🔲 OK to select.

247

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Devices and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required device and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to Delete and press 🔲 OK to select.
The display shows Device Deleted.

Bluetooth Mic Gain

Allows control of the connected Bluetooth-enabled device's microphone gain value.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Bluetooth and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to BT Mic Gain and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to the BT Mic Gain type and the current values.

To edit values, press 🔲 OK to select.

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to increase or to decrease values and press 🔲 OK to select.

Notification List

Your radio has a Notification List that collects all your "unread" events on the channel, such as unread text messages, missed calls, and call alerts.

The Notification icon appears on the status bar when the Notification List has one or more events.
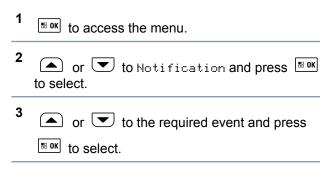
The list supports a maximum of forty (40) unread events. When it is full, the next event automatically replaces the oldest event.

Note:
After the events are read, they are removed from the Notification List.

248

Accessing the Notification List

1

⌨ OK to access the menu.

2

▲ or ▼ to Notification and press ⌨ OK to select.

3

▲ or ▼ to the required event and press ⌨ OK to select.

Long press ↩ *to return to the Home Screen.*

Wi-Fi Operation

Wi-Fi® is a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Note:

This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

This feature allows you to setup and connect to a Wi-Fi® network. Wi-Fi supports updates for radio firmware, codeplug, and resources such as language packs and voice announcement.

Turning Wi-Fi On or Off

Note:

This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

The programmed **Wi-Fi On or Off** button is assigned via CPS. Check with your dealer or system administrator to determine how your radio has been programmed.

You can turn on or turn off Wi-Fi® by performing one of the following actions.

- Press the programmed **Wi-Fi On or Off** button. Voice Announcement sounds Turning On Wi-Fi or Turning Off Wi-Fi.

- Access this feature via the menu.

  a) Press ⌨ OK to access the menu.

  b) Press ▲ or ▼ to WiFi and press ⌨ OK to select.

  c) Press ▲ or ▼ to WiFi Status and press ⌨ OK to select.

249

Press ⌷⌷OK to turn on Wi-Fi. The display shows
✔ beside Enabled.

Press ⌷⌷OK to turn off Wi-Fi. The ✔ disappears
from beside Enabled.

Connecting to a Network Access Point

> 📝 **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR
> 5580e only.

When you turn on Wi-Fi®, the radio scans and
connects to a network access point.

You can also connect to a network access point via
the menu.

1
Press ⌷⌷OK to access the menu.

2
Press ▲ or ▼ to WiFi and press ⌷⌷OK to
select.

3
Press ▲ or ▼ to Networks and press ⌷⌷OK
to select.

4
Press ▲ or ▼ to a network access point
and press ⌷⌷OK to select.

5
Press ▲ or ▼ to Connect and press ⌷⌷OK
to select.

6
Enter the password and press ⌷⌷OK .
When the connection is successful, the radio
displays a notice and the network access point is
saved into the profile list.

Refreshing the Network List

> 📝 **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR
> 5580e only.

- Perform the following actions to refresh the
  network list.

  a)
  Press ⌷⌷OK to access the menu.

  b)
  Press ▲ or ▼ to WiFi and press ⌷⌷OK
  to select.

250

c)
Press ⬆️ or ⬇️ to `Networks` and press

 OK to select.

When you enter the Networks menu, the radio automatically refreshes the network list.

- If you are already in the Networks menu, perform the following action to refresh the network list.

    a)
    Press ⬆️ or ⬇️ to `Refresh` and press

     OK to select.

    The radio refreshes and displays the latest network list.

Adding a Network

> **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

If a preferred network is not in the available network list, perform the following actions to add a network.

1
Press OK to access the menu.

2
Press ⬆️ or ⬇️ to `WiFi` and press OK to select.

3
Press ⬆️ or ⬇️ to `Networks` and press OK to select.

4
Press ⬆️ or ⬇️ to `Add Network` and press

 OK to select.

5
Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) and press

 OK .

6
Press ⬆️ or ⬇️ to `Open` and press OK to select.

7
Enter the password and press OK .

The radio displays ✅ to indicate that the network is successfully saved.

251

Viewing Details of Network Access Points

> 📝 **Note:**
> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only.

Perform the following actions to view details of network access points.

1 Press 🔳 OK to access the menu.

2 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to WiFi and press 🔳 OK to select.

3 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to Networks and press 🔳 OK to select.

4 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to a network access point and press 🔳 OK to select.

5 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to View Details and press 🔳 OK to select.

For a connected network access point, the Service Set Identifier (SSID), Security Mode, Media

Access Control (MAC) address, and Internet Protocol (IP) address are displayed.

For a non-connected network access point, the Service Set Identifier (SSID) and Security Mode are displayed.

Removing Network Access Points

> 📝 **Note:**
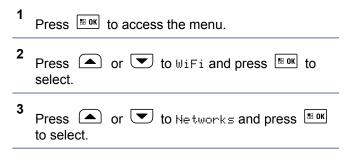> This feature is applicable to XPR 5550e/XPR 5580e only. Enterprise network access points that are added via CPS can only be removed via CPS.

Perform the following actions to remove network access points from the profile list.

1 Press 🔳 OK to access the menu.

2 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to WiFi and press 🔳 OK to select.

3 Press 🔼 or 🔽 to Networks and press 🔳 OK to select.

4
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to the selected network access point and press 🔳OK to select.

5
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to `Remove` and press 🔳OK to select.

6
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to `Yes` and press 🔳OK to select.

The radio displays ✅ to indicate that the selected network access point is successfully removed.

Utilities

Turning the Radio Tones/Alerts On or Off

You can enable and disable all radio tones and alerts (except for the incoming Emergency alert tone) if needed.

Press the programmed **All Tones/Alerts** button to toggle all tones on or off, or follow the procedure

described next to access this feature via the radio menu.

1
🔳OK to access the menu.

2
⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press 🔳OK to select.

3
⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press 🔳OK to select.

4
⏶ or ⏷ to `Tones/Alerts` and press 🔳OK to select.

5
⏶ or ⏷ to `All Tones` and press 🔳OK to select.

6
Press 🔳OK to enable/disable all tones and alerts.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

253

Setting the Tone Alert Volume Offset Level

You can adjust the Tone Alert Volume Offset level if needed. This feature adjusts the volume of the tones/alerts, allowing it to be higher or lower than the voice volume.

1 ⌨ OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press ⌨ OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press ⌨ OK to select.

4 ▲ or ▼ to Tones/Alerts and press ⌨ OK to select.

5 ▲ or ▼ to Vol. Offset and press ⌨ OK to select.

6 ▲ or ▼ to the required volume value.

The radio sounds a feedback tone with each corresponding volume value.

7 Do one of the following:

- Press ⌨ OK to keep the required displayed volume value.

- Press ↺ to exit without changing the current volume offset settings.

Turning the Talk Permit Tone On or Off

You can enable and disable the Talk Permit Tone if needed.

1 ⌨ OK to access the menu.

2 ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press ⌨ OK to select.

3 ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press ⌨ OK to select.

254

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Tones/Alerts` and press OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Talk Permit` and press OK to select.

6 Press OK to enable/disable the Talk Permit Tone.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Turning the Power Up Alert Tone On or Off

You can enable and disable the Power Up Alert Tone if needed.

1 OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Tones/Alerts` and press OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Power Up` and press OK to select.

6 Press OK to enable/disable the Power Up Alert Tone.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.
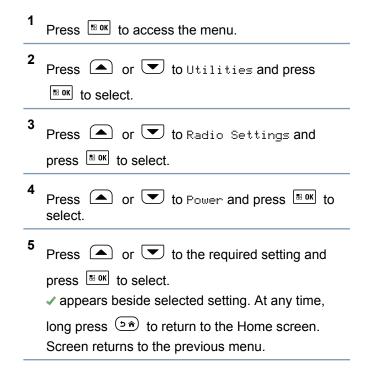
The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Setting the Power Level

You can customize your radio's power setting to high or low for each Connect Plus zone.

`High` enables communication with tower sites in Connect Plus mode located at a considerable distance from you. `Low` enables communication with tower sites in Connect Plus mode in closer proximity.

255

Press the programmed **Power Level** button to toggle transmit power level between high and low.

Follow the procedure described next to access this feature via the radio menu.

1
Press ⌷ OK to access the menu.

2
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press ⌷ OK to select.

3
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press ⌷ OK to select.

4
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to Power and press ⌷ OK to select.

5
Press ⏶ or ⏷ to the required setting and press ⌷ OK to select.
✔ appears beside selected setting. At any time, long press ⟳ to return to the Home screen.
Screen returns to the previous menu.

Changing the Display Mode

You can change radio's display mode between Day or Night, as needed. This affects the color palette of the display.

1
⌷ OK to access the menu.

2
⏶ or ⏷ to Utilities and press ⌷ OK to select.

3
⏶ or ⏷ to Radio Settings and press ⌷ OK to select.

4
⏶ or ⏷ to Display and press ⌷ OK to select.
The display shows Day Mode and Night Mode.

5
⏶ or ⏷ to the required setting and press ⌷ OK to enable. ✔ appears besides selected setting.

256

Adjusting the Display Brightness

You can adjust the display brightness of the radio as needed.

📝 **Note:**
Display brightness cannot be adjusted when Auto Brightness is enabled.

1 　🔲 OK 　to access the menu.

2 　▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 　▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 　▲ or ▼ to Display and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 　▲ or ▼ to Brightness and press 🔲 OK to select.
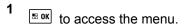The display shows a progress bar.

6 　Decrease display brightness by pressing ▲ or increase the display brightness by pressing ▼.
Select from setting of 1 to 8. Press 🔲 OK to confirm your entry.

Turning the Introduction Screen On or Off

You can enable and disable the Introduction Screen if needed.

1 　🔲 OK 　to access the menu.

2 　▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 　▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 　▲ or ▼ to Display and press 🔲 OK to select.

257

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Intro Screen` and press ⏹ OK to select.

6 Press ⏹ OK to enable/disable the Introduction Screen.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Language

You can set your radio display to be in your required language.

1 ⏹ OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press ⏹ OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press ⏹ OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Languages` and press ⏹ OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required language and press ⏹ OK to enable. ✔ appears beside selected language.

Turning the LED Indicator On or Off

You can enable and disable the LED Indicator if needed.

1 ⏹ OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press ⏹ OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press ⏹ OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `LED Indicator` and press ⏹ OK to select.

5Press 🔲OK to enable/disable the LED Indicator.

The display shows ✓ beside Enabled.

The ✓ disappears from beside Enabled.

Identifying Cable Type

You can select the type of cable your radio uses.

1
🔲OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

4
🔼 or 🔽 to Cable Type and press 🔲OK to select.

5 The current cable type is indicated by a ✓.

Voice Announcement

This feature enables the radio to audibly indicate the current Zone or Channel the user has just assigned, or programmable button press. This audio indicator can be customized per customer requirements. This is typically useful when the user is in a difficult condition to read the content shown on the display.

1
🔲OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Settings and press 🔲OK to select.

4
🔼 or 🔽 to Voice Announcement and press 🔲OK to select.

You can also use or to change the selected option.

5 Do one of the following:

259

- Press 🔳OK to enable Voice Announcement. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.
- Press 🔳OK to disable Voice Announcement. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Menu Timer

Set the period of time your radio stays in the menu before it automatically switches to the Home screen.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Utilities and press 🔳OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Settings and press 🔳OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to Display and press 🔳OK to select.

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to Menu Timer and press 🔳OK to select.

6 ⬆ or ⬇ to the required setting and press 🔳OK to select.

Turning Horns/Lights On or Off

This feature needs to be installed through your radio's rear accessory connector by your dealer.

Your radio is able to notify you of an incoming call via the horns and lights feature. When activated, an incoming call sounds your vehicle's horn and turns on its lights.

Press the programmed **Horns/Lights** button to toggle horns and light feature on or off.

1 🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Utilities and press 🔳OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Settings and press 🔳OK to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to `Horn/Lights` and press 🆗 to select.

5 Press 🆗 to enable/disable Horns/Lights.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Setting Dual Knob Operation Preference

Your radio has a dual-purpose **Volume/Channel Knob**. Disabling the dual-purpose option sets the knob to work as a Volume Knob only.

1 🆗 to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to `Utilities` and press 🆗 to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to `Radio Settings` and press 🆗 to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to `Dual Knob` and press 🆗 to select.

5 The display shows `Volume Only` and `Volume & Ch.` ⌃ or ⌄ to the required setting and press 🆗 to select.

✔ appears beside selected setting.

Screen returns to the previous menu.

Digital Mic AGC (Mic AGC-D)

This feature controls the your radio's microphone gain automatically while transmitting on a digital system. It suppresses loud audio or boosts soft audio to a preset value in order to provide a consistent level of audio.

1 🆗 to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to `Utilities` and press 🆗 to select.

261

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press ⬚OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Mic AGC-D` and press ⬚OK to select.

5 Do one of the following:

- Press ⬚OK to enable **Mic AGC-D**. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

- Press ⬚OK to disable **Mic AGC-D**. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Intelligent Audio

Your radio can automatically adjust its audio volume to overcome background noise in the environment, inclusive of all stationary and non-stationary noise sources. This feature is a Receive-only feature and does not affect Transmit audio.

1 ⬚OK to access the menu.

Radio Control	Steps
Menu	**1** ⬚OK to access the menu.
	2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press ⬚OK to select.
	3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Settings` and press ⬚OK to select.
	4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Intelligent Audio` and press ⬚OK to select.
	Note: You can also use or to change the selected option.
	5 Do one of the following:
	• Press ⬚OK to enable Intelligent Audio. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

262

Radio Control	Steps
	• Press ⊞OK to disable Intelligent Audio. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Utilities and press ⊞OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to Radio Settings and press ⊞OK to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to Intelligent Audio and press ⊞OK to select.

5 Do one of the following:

   • Press ⊞OK to enable Intelligent Audio. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

   • Press ⊞OK to disable Intelligent Audio. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

See Authorized Accessories List on page 277 for recommended Bluetooth-enabled audio accessories with in-built Automatic Volume Control for similar performance.

Turning the Acoustic Feedback Suppressor Feature On or Off

This feature allows you to minimize acoustic feedback in received calls.

1 ⊞OK to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Utilities and press ⊞OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to Radio Settings and press ⊞OK to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to AF Suppressor and press ⊞OK to select.

263

You can also use or to change the selected option.

5 Do one of the following.

- Press 🔲 OK to enable Acoustic Feedback Suppressor. The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

- Press 🔲 OK to disable Acoustic Feedback Suppressor. The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

Turning GPS/GNSS On or Off

Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) is a satellite navigation system that determines the radio's precise location. GNSS includes Global Positioning System (GPS), Global Navigation Satellite System (GLONASS), and BeiDou Navigation Satellite System (BDS).

Press the programmed **GPS/GNSS** button to toggle the feature on or off.

📝 **Note:**
Selected radio models may offer GPS, GLONASS, and BDS. GNSS constellation is configured via CPS. Check with your dealer or

system administrator to determine how your radio has been programmed.

1 Press 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to Radio Settings and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to GPS and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 Press 🔲 OK to enable/disable GPS/GNSS.

The display shows ✔ beside Enabled.

The ✔ disappears from beside Enabled.

See *Checking the GPS/GNSS Information* on page 137 for details on retrieving GPS/GNSS information.
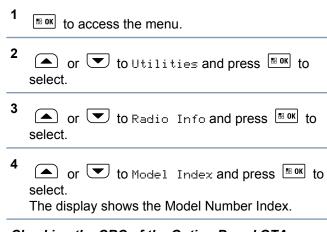
Accessing General Radio Information

Your radio contains information on the following:

- Battery
- Degree of Tilt (Accelerometer)
- Radio Model Number Index
- Option Board Over-the-Air (OTA) Codeplug CRC
- Site Number
- Site Info
- Radio Alias and ID
- Firmware and Codeplug Versions
- GPS Information

Press ⟲ at any time to return to the previous

screen or long press ⟲ to return to the Home screen. The radio exits the current screen once the inactivity timer expires.

Checking the Radio Model Number Index

This index number identifies your radio's model-specific hardware. Your radio system administrator may ask for this number when preparing a new Option Board codeplug for your radio.

1
🔳 OK to access the menu.

2
🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔳 OK to select.

3
🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Info and press 🔳 OK to select.

4
🔼 or 🔽 to Model Index and press 🔳 OK to select.
The display shows the Model Number Index.

Checking the CRC of the Option Board OTA Codeplug File

Follow the instructions below if your radio system administrator asks you to view the Option Board OTA Codeplug File CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check). This menu option only appears if the Option Board received its last codeplug update OTA.

1
🔳 OK to access the menu.

265

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to Radio Info and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to OB OTA CPcrc and press 🔲OK to select.
The display shows some letters and numbers. Communicate this information to your radio system administrator exactly as shown.

Displaying the Site ID (Site Number)

> **Note:**
> If you are not currently registered at a site, the display shows Not Registered.

The radio briefly shows the Site ID as it registers with a Connect Plus site. Following registration, the radio does not generally indicate the Site number. To display the registered Site number, do the following:

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⌃ or ⌄ to Utilities and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⌃ or ⌄ to Radio Info and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⌃ or ⌄ to Site Number and press 🔲OK to select.
The display shows the Network ID and the Site Number.

Checking the Site Info

> **Note:**
> If you are not currently registered at a site, the display shows Not Registered.

The Site Info feature provides information that can be useful to a service technician. It consists of the following information:

- Repeater number of current Control Channel repeater.
- RSSI: Last signal strength value measured from Control Channel repeater.

- Neighbor List sent by Control Channel repeater (five numbers separated by commas).

If you are requested to use this feature, please report the displayed information exactly as it appears on the screen.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⊲ or ⊳ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ⊲ or ⊳ to Radio Info and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ⊲ or ⊳ to Site Info and press 🔲 OK to select.
The display shows the Site Info.

Checking the Radio ID

This feature displays the ID of your radio.

Follow the procedure described next to access this feature via the radio screen.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⊲ or ⊳ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ⊲ or ⊳ to Radio Info and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ⊲ or ⊳ to My ID and press 🔲 OK to select.
The display shows the radio ID.

Checking the Firmware Version and Codeplug Version

Displays the firmware version on your radio.

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⊲ or ⊳ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ⊲ or ⊳ to Radio Info and press 🔲 OK to select.

267

4   ⬆ or ⬇ to Versions and press 🔳 OK to
select.

The display a list with the following information:

- (Radio) Firmware Version
- (Radio) Codeplug Version
- Option Board Firmware Version
- Option Board Frequency Version
- Option Board Hardware Version
- Option Board Codeplug Version

Checking for Updates

Connect Plus provides the ability to update certain
files (Option Board Codeplug, Network Frequency
File and Option Board Firmware File) over-the-air.

> **Note:**
> Check with the dealer or network administrator
> to determine whether this feature has been
> enabled for your radio.

Any display Connect Plus radio has the ability to
show its current Option Board OTA Codeplug CRC,
Frequency File version or Option Board firmware file
version via a menu option. In addition, display radios
that have been enabled for over-the-air file transfer

can display the version of a "pending file". A "pending
file" is a Frequency File or Option Board firmware file
that the Connect Plus radio knows about via system
messaging, but the radio has not yet collected all of
the file's packets. If a display Connect Plus radio has
a pending file, the menu provides options to:

- See the version number of the pending file.
- See what percentage of packets has been
  collected so far.
- Request the Connect Plus radio to resume
  collecting file packets.

If the radio is enabled for Connect Plus over-the-air
file transfer, there may be times when the radio
automatically joins a file transfer without first notifying
the radio user. While the radio is collecting file
packets, the LED rapidly blinks red and the radio
displays the High Volume Data icon on the Home
Screen status bar.

> **Note:**
> The Connect Plus radio cannot collect file
> packets and receive calls at the same time. If
> you wish to cancel the file transfer, press and
> release the **PTT** button. This causes the radio
> to request a call on the selected Contact
> Name, and it will also cancel the file transfer

for that radio until the process resumes at a later time.

There are several things that can make the file transfer process start again. The first example applies to all over-the-air file types. The other examples apply only to the Network Frequency File and Option Board Firmware File:

- The radio system administrator re-initiates the over-the-air file transfer.
- The Option Board's pre-defined timer expires, which causes the Option Board to automatically resume the process of collecting packets.
- The timer has not yet expired, but the radio user requests the file transfer to resume via the menu option.

After the Connect Plus radio finishes downloading all file packets, it must upgrade to the newly acquired file. For the Network Frequency File, this is an automatic process and does not require a radio reset. For the Option Board Codeplug File, this is an automatic process that will cause a brief interruption to service as the Option Board loads the new codeplug information and re-acquires a network site. How quickly the radio upgrades to a new Option Board firmware file depends on how the radio has

been configured by the dealer or system administrator. The radio will either upgrade immediately after collecting all file packets, or it will wait until the next time that the user turns the radio on.

Note:
Check with your dealer or system administrator to determine how your radio has been programmed.

The process of upgrading to a new Option Board firmware file takes several seconds, and it requires the Connect Plus Option Board to reset the radio. Once the upgrade starts, the radio use will not be able to make or receive calls until the process is completed.

Firmware File
Firmware Up to Date

Note:
If the Option Board firmware file is not Up to Date (and if the radio has partially collected a more recent Option Board firmware file version) the radio displays a list with additional options; Version, %Received, and Download.

269

1
  🔳OK to access the menu.

2
  🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔳OK to
select.

3
  🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Info and press 🔳OK to
select.

4
  🔼 or 🔽 to Updates and press 🔳OK to
select.

5
  🔼 or 🔽 to Firmware and press 🔳OK to
select.
The display shows Firmware is Up to Date.

Pending Firmware – Version

1
  🔳OK to access the menu.
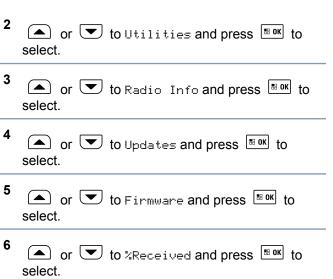
2
  🔼 or 🔽 to Utilities and press 🔳OK to
select.

3
  🔼 or 🔽 to Radio Info and press 🔳OK to
select.

4
  🔼 or 🔽 to Updates and press 🔳OK to
select.

5
  🔼 or 🔽 to Firmware and press 🔳OK to
select.

6
  🔼 or 🔽 to Version and press 🔳OK to
select.

If there is a pending Option Board firmware file,
the display shows the pending firmware version
number.

If there is a pending Option Board firmware file,
the display shows Firmware is Up to Date.

Pending Firmware – % Received

1
  🔳OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Info` and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Updates` and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Firmware` and press 🔲OK to select.

6 ⏶ or ⏷ to `%Received` and press 🔲OK to select.
The screen displays the percentage of firmware file packets collected so far.

> 📝 **Note:**
> When at 100%, the radio needs to be power cycled Off and then On to initiate the firmware upgrade.

Pending Firmware – Download

If the Connect Plus radio has previously left an OTA Option Board Firmware File Transfer with a partial file, the unit automatically rejoins the file transfer (if still ongoing) when an internal timer expires. If you want the unit to rejoin an ongoing Option Board Firmware File transfer prior to expiration of this internal timer, use the Download option as described below.

1 🔲OK to access the menu.

2 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Utilities` and press 🔲OK to select.

3 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Radio Info` and press 🔲OK to select.

4 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Updates` and press 🔲OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to `Firmware` and press 🔲OK to select.

271

6 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Download` and press 🔳 OK to select.
The display shows the following:

Download Available	`Start Download`
No Download Available	`Download not available`

7 Do one of the following:

- Select `Yes` and press 🔳 OK to start the download.

- Select `No` and press 🔳 OK to return to the previous menu.

Frequency File

Frequency File Up to Date

Note:
If the Frequency File is not Up to Date (and if the radio has partially collected a more recent frequency file version) the radio displays a list with additional options; `Version`, `%Received`, and `Download`.

1 🔳 OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Utilities` and press 🔳 OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Radio Info` and press 🔳 OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Frequency` and press 🔳 OK to select.
The display shows `Freq. File is Up to Date`.

Frequency File Pending – Version

1 🔳 OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Utilities` and press 🔳 OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to `Radio Info` and press 🔳 OK to select.

272

4 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Updates and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

5 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Frequency and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

6 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Version and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.
If there is a pending Frequency File, the display shows the pending Frequency File version number.

Frequency File Pending – % Received

1 $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to access the menu.

2 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Utilities and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

3 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Radio Info and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

4 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Updates and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

5 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to %Received and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.
The screen displays the percentage of frequency file packets collected so far.

Frequency File Pending – Download

If the Connect Plus radio has previously left an OTA Network Frequency File Transfer with a partial file, the unit automatically rejoins the file transfer (if still ongoing) when an internal timer expires. If you want the unit to rejoin an ongoing Network Frequency File transfer prior to expiration of this internal timer, use the Download option as described below.

1 $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to access the menu.

2 $\triangle$ or $\blacktriangledown$ to Utilities and press $\boxed{\text{OK}}$ to select.

273

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Info and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to Updates and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 ⬆ or ⬇ to Frequency and press 🔲 OK to select.

6 ⬆ or ⬇ to Download and press 🔲 OK to select.

| Download Currently Unavailable | Download not available |
| Download Currently Available | Start Download |

7 Do one of the following:

- Select Yes and press to start the download.
- Select No and press to return to the previous menu.

274

Checking the GPS/GNSS Information

Displays the GPS/GNSS information on your radio, such as values of:

- Latitude
- Longitude
- Altitude
- Direction
- Velocity
- Horizontal Dilution of Precision (HDOP)
- Satellites
- Version

1 🔲 OK to access the menu.

2 ⬆ or ⬇ to Utilities and press 🔲 OK to select.

3 ⬆ or ⬇ to Radio Info and press 🔲 OK to select.

4 ⬆ or ⬇ to GPS Info and press 🔲 OK to select.

5 ⏶ or ⏷ to the required item and press ⏹ OK
to select.
The display shows the requested GPS/GNSS
information.

See *Turning GPS/GNSS On or Off* on page 134 for
details on GPS/GNSS.

Accessories

Authorized Accessories List

Antennas

- VHF, 136 – 144 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAD4006_)
- VHF, 146 – 150.8 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAD4007_)
- VHF, 150.8 – 162 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAD4008_)
- VHF, 162 – 174 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAD4009_)
- VHF, 132 – 174 MHz, 3.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAD4022_)
- UHF, 403 – 430 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE4002_)
- UHF, 450 – 470 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE4003_)
- UHF, 470 – 527 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE4004_)
- UHF, 406 – 420 MHz, 3.5 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE4010_)
- UHF, 450 – 470 MHz, 3.5 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE4011_)
- UHF, 470 – 494 MHz, 3.5 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE4012_)
- UHF, 494 – 512 MHz, 3.5 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE4013_)
- Fixed Mount GPS Active Antenna (PMAN4000_)
- Window Mount GPS Active Antenna (PMAN4001_)
- Magnetic Mount GPS Active Antenna (PMAN4002_)
- Combination GPS+RF, Base Only, Through-hole Mount, Mini-U (PMAN4004_)
- UHF, 403 – 527 MHz, 2.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE6022_)
- Combination GPS+RF, 806 – 941 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAF4029_)
- Combination GPS+RF, 806 – 941 MHz, 3.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAF4030_)
- Combination GPS+RF, 806 – 941 MHz, 5.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAF4032_)
- Combination GPS+RF, 806 – 941 MHz, 5.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAF4033_)
- UHF, 445 – 470 MHz, 5.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Moun, Mini-U (with base) (RAE4004_RB)
- UHF, 445 – 470 MHz, 5.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (without base) (RAE4004_)

277

- Combination GPS/VHF, 136 – 144 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (RAD4214_)
- Combination GPS/VHF, 146 – 150.8 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (RAD4215_)
- Combination GPS/VHF, 150.8 – 162 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (RAD4216_)
- Combination GPS/VHF, 162 – 174 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (RAD4217_)
- Combination GPS/VHF, 146 – 172 MHz, 3.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (RAD4218_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 403 – 527 MHz, 2.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE6019_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 470 – 527 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE6020_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 470 – 494 MHz, 3.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE6024_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 494 – 512 MHz, 3.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAE6026_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 403 – 430 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (PMAE4030_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 450 – 470 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (PMAE4031_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 406 – 420 MHz, 3.5 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (PMAE4032_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 450 – 470 MHz, 3.5 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (PMAE4033_)
- Combination GPS/UHF, 450 – 470 MHz, 5.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (PMAE4034_)
- 800/900, 806 – 941 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAF4025_)
- 800/900, 806 – 941 MHz, 3.0dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAF4026_)
- 800/900, 806 – 941 MHz, Stubby Antenna, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAF4013_)
- 800/900, 806 – 941 MHz, 5.0dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount, Mini-U (HAF4027_)

For use with base PMAN4004_ only:

- UHF, 403 – 430 MHz, 1/4 Wave (PMAE4039_)
- UHF, 450 – 470 MHz, 1/4 Wave (PMAE4041_)
- UHF, 406 – 420 MHz, 3.5 dB Gain (PMAE4040_)
- UHF, 450 – 470 MHz, 3.5 dB Gain (PMAE4042_)
- UHF, 450 – 470 MHz, 5.0 dB Gain (PMAE4043_)
- VHF, 162 – 174 MHz, 1/4 Wave (RAD4223_)
- VHF, 150.8 – 162 MHz, 1/4 Wave (RAD4224_)
- VHF, 146 – 150.8 MHz, 1/4 Wave (RAD4225_)
- VHF, 136 – 144 MHz, 1/4 Wave (RAD4226_)
- VHF, 146 – 172 MHz, 3.0 dB Gain (RAD4227_)

- UHF, 470 – 527 MHz, 1/4 Wave, Through-Hole Mount (HAE6030_)
- UHF, 403 – 527 MHz, 2.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount (HAE6029_)
- UHF, 470 – 494 MHz, 3.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount (HAE6028_)
- UHF, 494 – 512 MHz, 3.0 dB Gain, Through-Hole Mount (HAE6027_)

Audio

- Telephone Style Handset (HMN4098_)
- Desktop Microphone (RMN5050_)
- Compact Microphone (RMN5052_)
- IMPRES 4-Way Navigation Keypad Microphone (RMN5127_)
- Heavy Duty Microphone with Enhanced Audio (RMN5053_)
- Visor Microphone with Enhanced Audio (RMN5054_)
- Operations Critical Wireless Earpiece, 12" Cable (NNTN8125_)
- Operations Critical Wireless Push-to-Talk POD (NNTN8127_)

- Non-Secure Wireless Headset & Push-to-Talk Device with Push-to-Talk Audio, 12-Inch Cable (NNTN8189_)
- Bluetooth Accessory Kit, SP, 9.5" Cable (NNTN8190_)
- Operations Critical Wireless Earpiece, 9.5" Cable (NNTN8126_)
- Wireless Covert Kit, includes two sets of 2-Wire Earbuds (1 Black and 1 White), 1-Wire Earbud (Black), and a 3.5 mm Adapter to plug into any off-the-shelf headphones (NNTN8296_) [7]
- Wireless Neckloop Y-adapter and retention hook for Completely Discreet Kit (NNTN8385_) [7]
- HK200 Bluetooth Headset (89409N)
- Compact Microphone Replacement Cable (3075336B07)
- Heavy Duty/Keypad Microphone Replacement Cable (3075336B10)
- Completely Discreet Earpiece Kit (RLN4922_) [7]
- XBT Behind-the-Neck, Non-Secure Wireless Heavy Duty Headset (RLN6490_)
- XBT Overhead, Non-Secure Wireless Heavy Duty Headset (RLN6491_)
- MOTOTRBO Bluetooth Accessory Kit with NA Power Supply (RLN6500_)

279

- Swivel Earpiece with In-Line Microphone for Bluetooth Accessory Kit Pod, Pack of 3 (RLN6550_) [7]
- Flexible Fit Swivel Earpiece with Boom Mic (PMLN7181_) [7]
- Flexible Fit Swivel Earpiece with Boom Mic, Multipack (PMLN7203_) [7]

Cables

- Power Cable to Battery, 10-foot (3-metre) Cable, 15 amp (1 – 25 Watt) (HKN4137_)
- Power Cable to Battery, 10-foot (3-metre) Cable, 20 amp (1 – 45 Watt) (HKN4191_)
- Power Cable to Battery, 20-foot (6-metre) Cable, 20 amp (1 – 45 Watt) (HKN4192_)
- Mobile and Repeater Rear Accessory Connector Universal Cable (PMKN4018_)
- Ignition Sense Cable (RKN4136_)
- Mobile Mic Extension Cable, 10 feet (PMKN4033_)

- Mobile Mic Extension Cable, 20 feet (PMKN4034_)
- Mobile Front (MMP) Programming Cable (HKN6184_)
- MAP Programming Cable (PMKN4010_)
- MAP Programming and Test Cable (PMKN4016_)
- Remote Mount (3-metre) Cable (PMKN4143_)
- Remote Mount (5-metre) Cable (PMKN4144_)

Desktop Accessories

- Radio Power Cable for GPN6145 (GKN6266_)
- Desktop Tray without Speaker (GLN7318_)
- Desktop Tray with Speaker (RSN4005_)
- Switchmode Power Supply (1 – 25 Watt Models) (CE marked) (GPN6145_)
- Power Supply and Cable (HPN4007_)
- Hardware Kit for Rear Accessory Connector (PMLN5072_)
- US Line Cord (3060665A04)
- Euro Line Cord (3060665A05)
- Power Cable, UK Plug (Straight) (3002695B05)

7 Your radio is compatible with the accessories listed here. Contact your dealer for details.

Mounting Kits

- In Dash (DIN) Mounting Kit (RLN6465_)
- Low Profile Trunnion Kit (RLN6466_)
- High Profile Trunnion Kit (RLN6467_)
- Key Lock Trunnion Kit (RLN6468_)
- Low Profile Trunnion – Bag (RLN6469_)
- Remote Mount Transceiver Interface (PMLN6402_)
- Remote Mount Control Head Interface (PMLN6403_)

Speakers

- 13-Watt External Speaker (RSN4002_)
- 7.5-Watt External Speaker (RSN4003_)
- 5-Watt External Speaker (RSN4004_)

Miscellaneous Accessories

- PL259/Mini-U Antenna Adapter, 8-foot (2.4-metre) Cable (HKN9557_)
- Microphone Hang Up Clip (All Microphones) (HLN9073_)
- Universal Microphone Hang Up Clip (All Microphones) (HLN9414_)

- Push Button PTT (RLN5926_)
- Emergency Footswitch (RLN5929_)
- IMPRES Mobile MMP Non-PC Adapter (PMKN4072_)
- IMPRES Mobile MAP Non-PC Adapter (PMKN4070_)
- Surge Protector, Tower Mount Kit (DQT1)
- Surge Protector, Coax Protector Bulkhead (DSISB50LNC2MA)
- Generic Option Board (PMLN5718_S)
- Operations Critical Wireless 1-Wire Surveillance Kit with translucent tube (PMLN7052_)

281

Maritime Radio Use in the VHF Frequency Range

Special Channel Assignments

Emergency Channel

If you are in imminent and grave danger at sea and require emergency assistance, use VHF Channel 16 to send a distress call to nearby vessels and the United States Coast Guard. Transmit the following information, in this order:

1 "MAYDAY, MAYDAY, MAYDAY."
2 "THIS IS _____, CALL SIGN _____." State the name of the vessel in distress 3 times, followed by the call sign or other identification of the vessel, stated 3 times.
3 Repeat "MAYDAY" and the name of the vessel.
4 "WE ARE LOCATED AT _____." State the position of the vessel in distress, using any information that will help responders to locate you, e.g.:

- latitude and longitude
- bearing (state whether you are using true or magnetic north)

- distance to a well-known landmark
- vessel course, speed or destination

5 State the nature of the distress.
6 Specify what kind of assistance you need.
7 State the number of persons on board and the number needing medical attention, if any.
8 Mention any other information that would be helpful to responders, such as type of vessel, vessel length and/or tonnage, hull color, etc.
9 "OVER."
10 Wait for a response.
11 If you do not receive an immediate response, remain by the radio and repeat the transmission at intervals until you receive a response. Be prepared to follow any instructions given to you.

Non-Commercial Call Channel

For non-commercial transmissions, such as fishing reports, rendezvous arrangements, repair scheduling, or berthing information, use **VHF Channel 9**.

Operating Frequency Requirements

A radio designated for shipboard use must comply with Federal Communications Commission Rule Part 80 as follows:

- on ships subject to Part II of Title III of the Communications Act, the radio must be capable of operating on the 156.800 MHz frequency.
- on ships subject to the Safety Convention, the radio must be capable of operating:

  - in the simplex mode on the ship station transmitting frequencies specified in the 156.025 – 157.425 MHz frequency band, and
  - in the semiduplex mode on the two frequency channels specified in the table below.

Note:

Simplex channels 3, 21, 23, 61, 64, 81, 82, and 83 cannot be lawfully used by the general public in US waters.

Additional information about operating requirements in the Maritime Services can be obtained from the full text of FCC Rule Part 80 and from the US Coast Guard.

Table 1: VHF Marine Channel List

Channel Number	Frequency (MHz)	
	Transmit	**Receive**
1	156.050	160.650
2	156.100	160.700
*	156.150	160.750
4	156.200	160.800
5	156.250	160.850
6	156.300	–
7	156.350	160.950
8	156.400	–
9	156.450	156.450
10	156.500	156.500
11	156.550	156.550
12	156.600	156.600
13**	156.650	156.650
14	156.700	156.700
15**	156.750	156.750
16	156.800	156.800
17**	156.850	156.850

283

18	156.900	161.500		66	156.325	160.925
19	156.950	161.550		67**	156.375	156.375
20	157.000	161.600		68	156.425	156.425
*	157.050	161.650		69	156.475	156.475
22	157.100	161.700		71	156.575	156.575
*	157.150	161.750		72	156.625	–
24	157.200	161.800		73	156.675	156.675
25	157.250	161.850		74	156.725	156.725
26	157.300	161.900		75	***	***
27	157.350	161.950		76	***	***
28	157.400	162.000		77**	156.875	–
60	156.025	160.625		78	156.925	161.525
*	156.075	160.675		79	156.975	161.575
62	156.125	160.725		80	157.025	161.625
63	156.175	160.775		*	157.075	161.675
*	156.225	160.825		*	157.125	161.725
65	156.275	160.875		*	157.175	161.775

84	157.225	161.825
85	157.275	161.875
86	157.325	161.925
87	157.375	161.975
88	157.425	162.025

Note:

** Simplex channels 3, 21, 23, 61, 64, 81, 82, and 83 cannot be **lawfully used** by the general public in US waters.*

** Low power (1 W) only.

*** Guard band.

Note:
A – in the Receive column indicates that the channel is transmit only.

Declaration of Compliance for the Use of Distress and Safety Frequencies

The radio equipment does not employ a modulation other than the internationally adopted modulation for maritime use when it operates on the distress and safety frequencies specified in RSS-182 Section 7.3.

Technical Parameters for Interfacing External Data Sources

	RS232	USB	SB9600
Input Voltage (Volts Peak-to-peak)	18V	3.6V	5V
Max Data Rate	28 kb/s	12 Mb/s	9.6 kb/s
Impedance	5000 ohm	90 ohm	120 ohm

Limited Warranty

MOTOROLA COMMUNICATION PRODUCTS

I. WHAT THIS WARRANTY COVERS AND FOR HOW LONG:

MOTOROLA SOLUTIONS, INC. ("MOTOROLA") warrants the MOTOROLA manufactured Communication Products listed below ("Product") against defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of time from the date of purchase as scheduled below:

Digital Mobile Radios	24 Months
Product Accessories	12 Months

MOTOROLA, at its option, will at no charge either repair the Product (with new or reconditioned parts), replace it (with a new or reconditioned Product), or refund the purchase price of the Product during the warranty period provided it is returned in accordance with the terms of this warranty. Replaced parts or boards are warranted for the balance of the original applicable warranty period. All replaced parts of Product shall become the property of MOTOROLA.

This express limited warranty is extended by MOTOROLA to the original end user purchaser only and is not assignable or transferable to any other party. This is the complete warranty for the Product manufactured by MOTOROLA. MOTOROLA assumes no obligations or liability for additions or modifications to this warranty unless made in writing and signed by an officer of MOTOROLA.

Unless made in a separate agreement between MOTOROLA and the original end user purchaser, MOTOROLA does not warrant the installation, maintenance or service of the Product.

MOTOROLA cannot be responsible in any way for any ancillary equipment not furnished by MOTOROLA which is attached to or used in connection with the Product, or for operation of the Product with any ancillary equipment, and all such equipment is expressly excluded from this warranty. Because each system which may use the Product is unique, MOTOROLA disclaims liability for range, coverage, or operation of the system as a whole under this warranty.

286

II. GENERAL PROVISIONS:

This warranty sets forth the full extent of MOTOROLA'S responsibilities regarding the Product. Repair, replacement or refund of the purchase price, at MOTOROLA's option, is the exclusive remedy. THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER EXPRESS WARRANTIES. IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. IN NO EVENT SHALL MOTOROLA BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT, FOR ANY LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF TIME, INCONVENIENCE, COMMERCIAL LOSS, LOST PROFITS OR SAVINGS OR OTHER INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE SUCH PRODUCT, TO THE FULL EXTENT SUCH MAY BE DISCLAIMED BY LAW.

III. STATE LAW RIGHTS:

SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR LIMITATION ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY.

This warranty gives specific legal rights, and there may be other rights which may vary from state to state.

IV. HOW TO GET WARRANTY SERVICE:

You must provide proof of purchase (bearing the date of purchase and Product item serial number) in order to receive warranty service and, also, deliver or send the Product item, transportation and insurance prepaid, to an authorized warranty service location. Warranty service will be provided by MOTOROLA through one of its authorized warranty service locations. If you first contact the company which sold you the Product (e.g., dealer or communication service provider), it can facilitate your obtaining warranty service. You can also call MOTOROLA at 1-800-927-2744 US/Canada.

287

V. WHAT THIS WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

1 Defects or damage resulting from use of the Product in other than its normal and customary manner.
2 Defects or damage from misuse, accident, water, or neglect.
3 Defects or damage from improper testing, operation, maintenance, installation, alteration, modification, or adjustment.
4 Breakage or damage to antennas unless caused directly by defects in material workmanship.
5 A Product subjected to unauthorized Product modifications, disassembles or repairs (including, without limitation, the addition to the Product of non-MOTOROLA supplied equipment) which adversely affect performance of the Product or interfere with MOTOROLA's normal warranty inspection and testing of the Product to verify any warranty claim.
6 Product which has had the serial number removed or made illegible.
7 Rechargeable batteries if:

- any of the seals on the battery enclosure of cells are broken or show evidence of tampering.
- the damage or defect is caused by charging or using the battery in equipment or service other than the Product for which it is specified.

8 Freight costs to the repair depot.
9 A Product which, due to illegal or unauthorized alteration of the software/firmware in the Product, does not function in accordance with MOTOROLA's published specifications or the FCC certification labeling in effect for the Product at the time the Product was initially distributed from MOTOROLA.
10 Scratches or other cosmetic damage to Product surfaces that does not affect the operation of the Product.
11 Normal and customary wear and tear.

VI. PATENT AND SOFTWARE PROVISIONS:

MOTOROLA will defend, at its own expense, any suit brought against the end user purchaser to the extent that it is based on a claim that the Product or parts infringe a United States patent, and MOTOROLA will pay those costs and damages finally awarded against

the end user purchaser in any such suit which are attributable to any such claim, but such defense and payments are conditioned on the following:

1 that MOTOROLA will be notified promptly in writing by such purchaser of any notice of such claim,

2 that MOTOROLA will have sole control of the defense of such suit and all negotiations for its settlement or compromise, and

3 should the Product or parts become, or in MOTOROLA's opinion be likely to become, the subject of a claim of infringement of a United States patent, that such purchaser will permit MOTOROLA, at its option and expense, either to procure for such purchaser the right to continue using the Product or parts or to replace or modify the same so that it becomes non-infringing or to grant such purchaser a credit for the Product or parts as depreciated and accept its return. The depreciation will be an equal amount per year over the lifetime of the Product or parts as established by MOTOROLA.

MOTOROLA will have no liability with respect to any claim of patent infringement which is based upon the combination of the Product or parts furnished

hereunder with software, apparatus or devices not furnished by MOTOROLA, nor will MOTOROLA have any liability for the use of ancillary equipment or software not furnished by MOTOROLA which is attached to or used in connection with the Product. The foregoing states the entire liability of MOTOROLA with respect to infringement of patents by the Product or any parts thereof.

Laws in the United States and other countries preserve for MOTOROLA certain exclusive rights for copyrighted MOTOROLA software such as the exclusive rights to reproduce in copies and distribute copies of such MOTOROLA software. MOTOROLA software may be used in only the Product in which the software was originally embodied and such software in such Product may not be replaced, copied, distributed, modified in any way, or used to produce any derivative thereof. No other use including, without limitation, alteration, modification, reproduction, distribution, or reverse engineering of such MOTOROLA software or exercise of rights in such MOTOROLA software is permitted. No license is granted by implication, estoppel or otherwise under MOTOROLA patent rights or copyrights.

289

VII. GOVERNING LAW:

This Warranty is governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, U.S.A.

MOTOROLA

68009504001-GC